IBM Infoprint Server for z/OS
Implementation Planning

Basic to extended mode migration, HTTP server
Sample tools for customization
ICONV customization

Paul Rogers
Klaus Goetze

ibm.com/redbooks
Note: Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page vii.

First Edition (July 2008)

This edition applies to Version 1 Release 8 of z/OS (5694-A01), Version 1 Release 8 of z/OS.e (5655-G52), and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notices</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trademarks</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The team that wrote this book</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Become a published author</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments welcome</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 1. Infoprint Server</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Infoprint Server overview</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Tasks required to implement Infoprint Server</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1 Create a UNIX System Service file system</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2 Define environment variables</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.3 Define users for administration and operations</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4 Set permissions for directories and executable files</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5 Customize Infoprint Server configuration files</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.6 Start Infoprint Server</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.7 Stop Infoprint Server daemons</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Infoprint Server ISPF panels</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Tasks required to implement IP PrintWay</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.1 IP PrintWay extended mode customization</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2 IP PrintWay basic mode customization</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Implementation of NetSpool</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 2. Using the Security Authorization Facility for Infoprint Server security</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Security processing</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1 MVS security versus z/OS UNIX security</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.2 File and directory permission bits</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.3 File security packet (FSP)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.4 Setting permissions for directories and executable files</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Summary of UNIX commands</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Summary of RACF commands</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Establishing SAF security with RACF</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.1 Activating the FACILITY class</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2 Activating the JESSPOOL class</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.3 Activating the OPERCMDS class</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.4 Activating the PRINTSRV class</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Controlling UNIX System Service environment</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1 User profiles with OMVS segments</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.2 Setting limits for z/OS UNIX users</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.3 Controlling the number of processes and threads</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 3. Printer definitions</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Printer Inventory overview</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Components</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2 Infoprint Server components</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Utility programs</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 Using the AOPBATCH utility</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4. Migrating from basic mode to extended mode

4.1 IP PrintWay extended mode ........................................... 60
4.2 Extended mode versus basic mode .................................. 60
4.2.1 Extended mode enhanced function and other advantages .... 61
4.3 Tasks required to migrate ............................................. 61
4.3.1 Edit the Infoprint Server configuration file aopd.conf ....... 61
4.3.2 Infoprint Server message configuration file aopmsg.conf .... 63
4.4 Printer Inventory directories and files ............................. 64
4.4.1 /var/Printsrv directory ........................................... 65
4.4.2 Calculate the space needed for temporary files ......... 66
4.4.3 Space allocation for /var/Printsrv file system ............ 67
4.4.4 Specify environment variables for IP PrintWay extended mode .... 69
4.4.5 Define IP PrintWay job-selection rules ........ 69
4.4.6 Customize Infoprint Central ................................. 70
4.5 Migration issues and concerns .................................... 70
4.5.1 Attributes to review ............................................. 71
4.6 The SMF type 6 record .............................................. 72
4.7 User exits .................................................................... 73
4.7.1 Exits used by IP PrintWay ......................................... 73
4.7.2 The exit parameter area - ANFUEXTP ......................... 74
4.7.3 The job separator page data area - IAZJSPA ............... 74
4.8 IP Printway and VTAM-controlled printers ...................... 75

Chapter 5. Infoprint Central .................................................. 77
5.1 Infoprint Central and the HTTP server ......................... 78
5.1.1 Software requirements ............................................ 78
5.1.2 The z/OS HTTP Server ............................................ 79
5.2 Customizing the z/OS HTTP Server ............................. 79
5.2.1 HTTP procedure .................................................. 80
5.2.2 z/OS HTTP Server environment variables file (httpd.envvars) .... 82
5.2.3 Infoprint Server configuration file ......................... 85
5.2.4 Sample HTTP Server file configuration file ................. 85
5.2.5 Customize the HTTP Server configuration file ...... 85
Chapter 6. Messages and diagnosis

6.1 Problems with the Web server .................................................. 118
  6.1.1 Web server tracing ......................................................... 119

6.2 Messages in Infoprint Server .................................................... 120

6.3 Infoprint Server common message log ........................................ 120
  6.3.1 Common message log ...................................................... 121
  6.3.2 Browsing the common message log ................................... 122
  6.3.3 Using the aoplogu command ........................................... 124
  6.3.4 Messages to the hardcopy log ......................................... 126
  6.3.5 A REXX tool to view the common message log ...................... 128

6.4 View messages with Infoprint Central ....................................... 129
  6.4.1 IP PrintWay Printer Information panel ................................ 129
  6.4.2 Infoprint Server Print Job Information panel ....................... 131
  6.4.3 View log for a printer .................................................. 132
  6.4.4 Viewing the printer log ................................................ 133
  6.4.5 Messages from the OPERLOG .......................................... 134

Chapter 7. Code page translation .................................................... 137

7.1 Data representation ............................................................. 138

7.2 The iconv utility ................................................................. 139
  7.2.1 Creating a conversion table ............................................ 140
  7.2.2 Determine the glyph represented for each code point ............ 140
  7.2.3 Using the genxt utility to create a translate table ............... 141
  7.2.4 Updating the codeset name table ..................................... 142
  7.2.5 Using indirect or direct conversion ................................... 143
  7.2.6 Modifying an existing conversion table ............................... 144
Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:
IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.
Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both. If these and other IBM trademarked terms are marked on their first occurrence in this information with a trademark symbol (® or ™), these symbols indicate U.S. registered or common law trademarks owned by IBM at the time this information was published. Such trademarks may also be registered or common law trademarks in other countries. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at “Copyright and trademark information” at:

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

- AIX®
- CICS®
- IBM®
- IMS™
- IP PrintWay™
- Language Environment®
- MVS™
- NetSpool™
- OS/390®
- Print Services Facility™
- PrintWay™
- RACF®
- REXX™
- Redbooks®
- Redbooks (logo)
- VTAM®
- z/OS®

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

- PostScript, and Portable Document Format (PDF) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, other countries, or both.
- ABAP, SAP R/3, SAP, and SAP logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of SAP AG in Germany and in several other countries.
- Java, and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.
- Internet Explorer, Microsoft, Windows, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.
- UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.
Preface

This IBM® Redbooks® publication provides installation and customization information and samples to help you implement IBM Infoprint Server for z/OS®. Infoprint Server is an optional feature of z/OS that uses z/OS UNIX® System Services. This feature is the basis for a total print serving solution for the z/OS environment. It lets you consolidate your print workload from many servers onto a central z/OS print server.

Infoprint Server delivers improved efficiency and lower overall printing cost with the flexibility for high-volume, high-speed printing from anywhere in the network. With Infoprint Server, you can reduce the overall cost of printing while improving manageability, data retrievability, and usability.

The following topics are described:

- Migrating from basic mode to extended mode
- Configuring an HTTP server for Infoprint Central
- Coordinating settings in JES, OMVS, TCP/IP, and the Printer Inventory using a cross-reference tool, with documentation
- Viewing messages in aoplogu using sample AOPBATCH JCL
- Monitoring and cleaning up CEEDUMP file using a sample tool
- Customizing the ICONV tables for custom code-page creation

The team that wrote this book

This book was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization, Poughkeepsie Center.

Paul Rogers is a Consulting IT Specialist at the International Technical Support Organization, Poughkeepsie Center who has worked for IBM for almost 41 years. He writes extensively and teaches IBM classes worldwide on various aspects of z/OS, z/OS UNIX, JES3, and Infoprint Server. Before joining the ITSO 20 years ago, Paul worked in the IBM Installation Support Center (ISC) in Greenford, England for eight years, providing OS/390® and JES support for IBM EMEA. He also worked in the Washington Systems Center for three years.

Klaus Goetze is an IT specialist in Germany. He has 15 years of experience in support of MVS™, OS/390, and z/OS software products. His areas of expertise include JES2, JES3, Infoprint Server, PSF, and AFP architecture.

Become a published author

Join us for a two- to six-week residency program! Help write a book dealing with specific products or solutions, while getting hands-on experience with leading-edge technologies. You will have the opportunity to team with IBM technical professionals, Business Partners, and Clients.
Your efforts will help increase product acceptance and customer satisfaction. As a bonus, you will develop a network of contacts in IBM development labs, and increase your productivity and marketability.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at: 

ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html

Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our books to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this book or other IBM Redbooks in one of the following ways:

► Use the online Contact us review Redbooks form found at:
  
  ibm.com/redbooks

► Send your comments in an e-mail to:
  
  redbooks@us.ibm.com

► Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization
Dept. HYTD Mail Station P099
2455 South Road
Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400
Infoprint Server

As mentioned, Infoprint Server is an optional feature of z/OS that uses z/OS UNIX System Services. The feature is the basis for a total print serving solution for the z/OS environment, allowing you to consolidate your print workload from many servers onto a central z/OS print server.

Infoprint Server delivers improved efficiency and lower overall printing cost with the flexibility for high-volume, high-speed printing from anywhere in the network. With Infoprint Server, you can reduce the overall cost of printing while improving manageability, data retrievability, and usability.

Following are examples of printing situations in which you can use Infoprint Server:

- Printing old style IMS™ or CICS® output data on network printers (ASCII printers in a TCP/IP network and VTAM®-controlled printers in an SNA network)
- Printing UNIX data on AFP printers
- Printing Web documents data using the Windows® SMB printing protocol
- Printing Web documents using the Infoprint Port Monitor for Windows
- Printing documents over the Internet using the Internet Printing Protocol (IPP)
- Printing data from batch applications to network printers
- Printing AFP data from batch applications on LAN-based Printer Control Language (PCL) printers and to e-mail destinations
- Printing AFP documents from Windows environments
- Printing SAP® R/3 Output Text Format (OTF) and Advanced Business Application Programming (ABAP™) data stream files on AFP printers
- Monitoring printer status
1.1 Infoprint Server overview

The Infoprint Server feature is the basis for a total print serving solution for the z/OS environment on a TCP/IP network. Infoprint Server lets users submit print requests from remote workstations in a TCP/IP network, from UNIX System Services applications, from batch applications, and from VTAM applications, such as CICS or IMS applications. It allows you to consolidate your print workload from the servers onto a central z/OS print server.

**Print Interface**
Print Interface is the component of Infoprint Server that processes print requests received from both remote clients and local users. When the Print Interface receives a print request, it allocates an output data set on the JES spool.

**IP PrintWay™**
IP PrintWay is the component of Infoprint Server that transmits output data sets from the JES2 or JES3 spool to network printers, or to other host systems in your TCP/IP network. The remote printer or host system must support the LPR/LPD protocol, the IPP protocol, or direct socket printing. IP PrintWay provides fast access to TCP/IP-connected printers and to Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM)-controlled printers.

**NetSpool™**
NetSpool intercepts print data from VTAM applications, such as CICS and IMS; transforms the data streams to EBCDIC line data, PCL, PDF, or other formats that the target printer accepts; and writes the output data set to the JES spool. JES or PSF can print the output data sets, or JES can transmit them to other locations for printing. IP PrintWay can transmit the output data sets to remote printers in your TCP/IP network.

**Infoprint Central**
Infoprint Central is a Web-based print management system primarily intended for help desk operators. However, other authorized users or job submitters can also use it. Infoprint Central works with IP PrintWay extended mode.

**Infoprint Transform**
Infoprint Transforms are programs that convert a data stream from one format to another (for example, from PCL to AFP, AFP to PDF, and so on). These data stream transforms give you the flexibility to print a variety of output on a wide range of printers.

**SNMP subagent**
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a set of protocols that describes management data and the protocols for exchanging that data between heterogeneous systems.
1.2 Tasks required to implement Infoprint Server

The following tasks are required to implement Infoprint Server:

- Create a UNIX System Service file system
- Define environment variables
- Define users for administration and operations
- Set permissions for directories and executable files
- Customize Infoprint Server configuration files
- Start Infoprint Server
- Stop Infoprint Server daemons

The following sections explain how to complete these tasks.

1.2.1 Create a UNIX System Service file system

First, you need to create a file system that contains the Printer Inventory and other Infoprint Server files. You can use a batch job, as shown in Figure 1-1, or you can use the ISPF shell or the TSO/E ALLOCATE command to create a HFS or zFS data set.

```
//STEP01 EXEC PGM=IEFBR14
//HFS       DD DSN=OMVS.PRINTSRV.HFS,SPACE=(CYL,(20,1,1)),
//             DSNTYPE=HFS,DCB=(DSORG=PO),
//             DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE),
//             STORCLAS=OPENMVS
```

*Figure 1-1  Batch job to create a UNIX System Service file system*

If your system is part of a sysplex, the file system must be system-specific and designated NOAUTOMOVE in the BPXPRMxx parmlib member. You can enter a `mount` command to mount the file system:

```
MOUNT FILESYSTEM('OMVS.PRINTSRV.HFS') TYPE(HFS) MOUNTPOINT('/var/Printsrv')
```

**Printer Inventory files**

Infoprint Server creates the Printer Inventory files automatically the first time that Printer Inventory Manager is started. The Printer Inventory contains the following files:

- master.db
- jestoken.db
- pwjestoken.db

All database files are optimized for rapid direct access to objects. When you add objects to the Printer Inventory, these files increase in size. When you remove objects, the files do not decrease in size because the Printer Inventory Manager simply designates as available the space within the file that had been occupied by the removed objects. When you add objects in the future, the Printer Inventory Manager uses available space within the files. The files increase in size only when they do not contain sufficient available storage. So, the size of each file can be characterized as a high-water mark.

**/etc/Printsrv directory**

Another directory required: the /etc/Printsrv directory. The /etc/Printsrv directory contains all Infoprint Server configuration files. This directory is created automatically with the appropriate permissions when you install Infoprint Server. For a secure environment, this directory should be owned by the UID of 0 and should be writable only by users with an effective UID of 0.
1.2.2 Define environment variables

There are environment variables that are either required or optional. Environment variables affect the processing of Infoprint Server directly. Required variables must always be set; they are shown in Figure 1-2. Optional variables must be set if the default value is not suitable for your installation. The optional variables may be set in either `aopstart` REXX™ or in the IP PrintWay procedure.

```
LIBPATH="/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib`
MANPATH="/usr/lpp/Printsrv/man/C"
NLSPATH="/usr/lpp/Printsrv/En_US/%N"
PATH="/usr/lpp/Printsrv/bin:/bin:.
```

Figure 1-2 Required environment variables settings for Infoprint Server

The Printer Inventory Manager, as well as other Infoprint Server daemons, use environment variables specified in the `aopstart` REXX EXEC. In addition, the daemons accept certain variables from the run-time environment, such as environment variables that control tracing, locale, and the language for messages. For example, you must specify the path of directories where you have installed the Infoprint server product. The recommended place is `/etc/profile`.

**Note:** The `aopstart` command is a REXX EXEC that sets environment variables that Infoprint Server daemons use. It also starts the Printer Inventory daemon and any other daemons specified in the start-daemons attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (`aopd.conf`).

The `aopstart` EXEC provided with Infoprint Server is suitable for most installations. However, you must edit the `aopstart` EXEC if you need to specify certain environment variables. For security reasons, Infoprint Server uses some environment variables only if they are set in the `aopstart` EXEC. Infoprint Server does not use the same variables set in the `/etc/profile` file.

These environment variables should be added in front of existing ones. This is important because Infoprint Server provides commands, like `lp` and `lpstat`, that already exist in UNIX System Services. In other words, the order of libraries decides which commands are used.

1.2.3 Define users for administration and operations

Define Infoprint Server administrators and operators to the security product as z/OS UNIX users. An Infoprint Server administrator must be able to read and update the Printer Inventory. Connect Infoprint Server administrators and operators to groups.

The user profiles of the Infoprint Server administrators and operators must have an OMVS segment and a home directory. Establish an OMVS segment and define the home directory to RACF® using the RACF ADDUSER command to add a new user or the ALTUSER command to change an existing user, or whatever methods are currently in use to create security definitions.

**Tip:** The sample CLIST in SYS1.SAMPLIB(AOPRACF) contains the RACF commands.
1.2.4 Set permissions for directories and executable files

The system assigns default permission bits for files and directories at creation time. The settings depend on the type of command or facility that is used. When the executable file is a set-user-ID or set-group-ID file, the file owner's UID or GID must be defined to the Security Access Facility (SAF). The aopsetup shell script helps you to set up the correct z/OS UNIX permissions for Infoprint Server directories and executable files before you start Infoprint Server daemons for the first time. Also rerun aopsetup whenever you change files in one of the Infoprint Server directories.

**Important:** You must run the aopsetup shell script to set up the correct z/OS UNIX permissions for Infoprint Server directories and executable files before you start Infoprint Server daemons for the first time.

You can run aopsetup from an rlogin shell, from an OMVS session, or with the BPXBATCH JCL job. Specify the names of the groups you defined for Infoprint Server operators and administrators as arguments to aopsetup. For example, if you defined one group to RACF named AOPOPER for operators and another group named AOPADMIN for administrators, then enter:

```
/usr/lpp/Printsrv/bin/aopsetup AOPOPER AOPADMIN
```

If /etc/profile has been updated to include the environment variables for the PATH, then simply enter:

```
aopsetup AOPOPER AOPADMIN
```

1.2.5 Customize Infoprint Server configuration files

The Infoprint Server configuration files (aopd.conf, aopxfd.conf, and aopmsg.conf) allow you to customize the Printer Inventory Manager and other components of Infoprint Server. These files are optional. If the configuration files do not exist, or if an attribute in the configuration files is omitted, then default values are used.

For security reasons, only users with a UID of zero (0) should be allowed to edit these configuration files.

1.2.6 Start Infoprint Server

Although it is not very probable that an operator would enter the OMVS shell and enter the aopstart command, this command can be used to start the Infoprint Server. To do so, either the operator user ID must have a TSO segment in the user profile, or the operator must enter the OMVS shell by using Telnet.

The AOPSTART procedure provided by Infoprint Server invokes the aopstart command to start the Printer Inventory Manager daemon (aopd) and any other daemons that are specified in the start-daemons attribute in the aopd.conf configuration file.

You must define the AOPSTART and AOPSTOP procedures to the RACF STARTED class. If you want to use the started procedure table (ICHRIN03) instead, refer to z/OS Security Server RACF Security Administrator's Guide, SA22-7683 for more information.
1.2.7 Stop Infoprint Server daemons

To stop the Printer Inventory Manager daemon, as well as all other Infoprint Server daemons, enter the **aopstop** command without specifying any daemon names. The Print Interface component of Infoprint Server stops accepting new print requests and completes all work in progress before shutting down.

The AOPSTOP procedure provided by Infoprint Server invokes the **aopstop** command to stop the Printer Inventory Manager daemon (aopd) and all other daemons currently running.

To use the **aopstop** command, the user ID must either be a member of the Security Server RACF AOPOPER group, or have a UID of 0

**Note:** Before you stop the Printer Inventory Manager daemon, stop other programs that are using the Printer Inventory (such as NetSpool, IP PrintWay, and PSF for OS/390).

An operator can enter the OMVS shell to stop all active daemons (including the Printer Inventory Manager daemons) after current activity ends. To do that, use this command from the OMVS shell:

```
aopstop
```

You can specify the daemon to stop. If you omit this option, all active daemons are stopped, including the Printer Inventory Manager daemons (aopd, aophinvd, aoplogd, and aopsdbd). To stop the Transform Manager and line printer daemons, use this command from the shell:

```
aopstop -d xfd -d lpd
```

To stop all daemons immediately, use this command (note that documents being processed may be lost, however).

```
aopstop now
```

1.3 Infoprint Server ISPF panels

The Infoprint Server administrator can use Infoprint Server ISPF panels to add, browse, copy, edit, and delete printer definitions and other objects in the Printer Inventory.

Normally, using the instructions in the ISPF Setup sections in the z/OS Program Directory, you need to concatenate the following libraries into the TSO logon procedure:

- **AOP.SAOPPENU** panel libraries to DD statement ISPPLIB
- **AOP.SAOPMENU** message libraries to DD statement ISPMLIB

Concatenate library **AOP.SAOPEXEC** to DD statement SYSPROC or SYSEXEC.

The ISPF z/OS System Programmer Primary Option menu (member ISR@390S in the ISP.SISPPENU library) provides a sample of how to invoke the Printer Inventory Manager ISPF application. You can update your ISPF primary option menu to include a selection option for the Printer Inventory Manager.

**Important:** Do not restart the Infoprint Server until **all** components are stopped.
Before using the ISPF panels, review and customize the AOPINIT EXEC provided in AOP:SAOPEXEC. The Printer Inventory Manager ISPF application REXX EXEC library, AOP:SAOPEXEC, is required to be included into the SYSPROC or SYSEXEC DD statement concatenation, or be dynamically available through the TSO ALTLIB service.

1.4 Tasks required to implement IP PrintWay

IP PrintWay transmits output data sets from the JES spool to remote printers or print servers and to e-mail destinations.

You can run either IP PrintWay basic mode or IP PrintWay extended mode:
- IP PrintWay basic mode, the original mode of operation, uses the z/OS Functional Subsystem Interface (FSI) to obtain output data sets from the JES spool. IBM does not plan additional enhancements to IP PrintWay basic mode.
- IP PrintWay extended mode, starting with z/OS V1R5, uses the z/OS SYSOUT Application Programming Interface (SAPI) to obtain output data sets from the JES spool. It provides better performance, improved usability, and more function than IP PrintWay basic mode.

The general recommendation is to migrate to IP Printway extended mode as soon as possible. If you install Infoprint Server and IP Printway for the first time, then there is no need to define IP Printway basic mode. IP Printway extended mode is a full function replacement. Tasks required implementing IP Printway basic mode are more extensive and you must make additional definitions in the Job Entry Subsystem (JES).

1.4.1 IP PrintWay extended mode customization

The recommendation is to run IP PrintWay extended mode to obtain better performance, improved usability, and additional functions. Also, IBM does not plan to add new functions to IP PrintWay basic mode in future releases.

To start IP Printway extended mode, specify `outd` in the start-daemon attribute of the aopd.conf configuration file and run the AOPSTART JCL procedure or enter the `aopstart` command.

The aopd.conf configuration file might be updated to include:

- `start-daemons = { outd }` - Specifies the daemons that start when you run the `aopstart` command or AOPSTART JCL procedure.
- `smf-recording = yes | no` - Indicates whether IP PrintWay extended mode is to write SMF type 6 records for data sets that it sends to a printer or e-mail destination.
- `resolve-printway-printers = yes | no` - Indicates whether IP PrintWay extended mode looks up the full hostnames of printers in the Domain Name Server (DNS).

IP PrintWay extended mode writes data to the `/var/Printsrv/printway` directory before sending the data to the printer. Therefore, carefully estimate the amount of space required for the file system.

1.4.2 IP PrintWay basic mode customization

IP PrintWay basic mode customization support requires special JES printers to be started in order to communicate with the FSAs in the FSS address space.
FSS procedure ANFWPROC
IP PrintWay provides a startup procedure in SYS1.PROCLIB(ANFWPROC). You can use the same startup procedure to start more than one IP PrintWay FSS, but only if you want all IP PrintWay FSSes to share the same IP PrintWay transmission-queue and message-log data sets. You must specify the name of this startup procedure in the JES initialization statement for each FSS definition.

Define JES basic mode printers
You must define a Functional Subsystem (FSS) and a Functional Subsystem Application (FSA) to the primary Job Entry Subsystem (JES2 or JES3). Figure 1-3 shows sample statements for JES2.

```
FSS(PRINTWAY)   PROC=ANFWPROC,AUTOSTOP=YES
PRT1            CLASS=E,FSS=PRINTWAY,MODE=FSS,PRESELECT=NO,
                START=NO,TRKCELL=YES,UCS=0,WS=(Q)
```

*Figure 1-3  Sample JES2 initialization statements*

Figure 1-4 shows sample statements for JES3.

```
FSSDEF,FSSNAME=PRINTWAY,PNAME=ANFWPROC,TYPE=WTR
DEVICE,DTYPE=PRTAFP1,FSSNAME=PRINTWAY,JNAME=PRT1,JUNIT=(,SYS1,UR,ON),
    MODE=FSS,PDEFAULT=(CHARS,FCB),WC=(E),WS=(CL,F)
```

*Figure 1-4  Sample JES3 initialization statements*

Several IP PrintWay FSAs can run in the same FSS. The FSA, after it is started, selects a data set to print by requesting the data set from JES.

Only one IP PrintWay FSS is required. However, for improved throughput and more efficient use of system resources, up to 2000 FSSes can be defined. To ensure that data sets are always transmitted in the same order as IP PrintWay acquires them from the JES spool, you must specify the same transmission queue data set in the startup procedure for each FSS.

IP PrintWay transmission queue
IP PrintWay keeps track of the work in process in the transmission queue data set. The IP PrintWay transmission queue is a VSAM cluster and contains an entry for each data set that IP PrintWay is transmitting to the remote systems, or that IP PrintWay is retaining on the JES spool. When a data set is selected to be printed, IP PrintWay creates an entry in the transmission-queue data set.

The IP PrintWay transmission-queue data set is a VSAM key-sequenced data set. You can define it with any name. A sample job is provided in SYS1.SAMPLIB(ANFDEAL), with a default data set name of ANF.QUEUE.

After allocating space for the transmission-queue data set, use the sample JCL in SYS1.SAMPLIB(ANFQINIT) to initialize the data set with binary zeroes. If you did not use the default name ANF.QUEUE for the data set, then change the name of the data set in the sample JCL.

IP PrintWay message log
IP PrintWay writes messages that track data set transmissions in an IP PrintWay message-log data set. This is a required data set.
You can create one message-log data set to be shared by all IP PrintWay functional subsystems (FSSes), or you can create separate data sets for each FSS. To allocate space for the data set and initialize it, use the sample JCL in SYS1.SAMPLIB(ANFMIJCL) to run the ANFMFILE program.

1.5 Implementation of NetSpool

NetSpool intercepts print data from VTAM applications, such as CICS and IMS; transforms the data streams to EBCDIC line data, PCL, PDF, or other formats that the printer accepts; and creates output data sets on the JES2 or JES3 spool.

The administrator must create or update the printer definition for each printer in the Printer Inventory and specify printer attributes required by NetSpool.

The administrator must also define each NetSpool printer logical unit (LU) to VTAM, and modify VTAM resource definitions if necessary.

NetSpool daemon aopnetd

The operator must start NetSpool and vary the NetSpool printer LUs active. You must add the netd value to any existing value in the start-daemon attribute to start the aopnetd daemon. The NetSpool daemon aopnetd controls part of the NetSpool processing. You start the daemon with the aopstart command. You can only run one NetSpool daemon, but it can control several NetSpool started tasks.

FSS procedure APIJPJCL

Before starting NetSpool, you must create a startup procedure. NetSpool provides a startup procedure in SYS1.PROCLIB(APIJPJCL). You can start more than one NetSpool task at the same time. Each started task runs in a different address space. If you start more than one NetSpool task, specify unique class values in the LUCLASS parameter in the startup procedure for each task. These class values correspond to LU class values specified in the printer definitions in the Printer Inventory.
Using the Security Authorization Facility for Infoprint Server security

The Security Authorization Facility (SAF) interface provides security for Infoprint Server. SAF is part of the z/OS environment and is always present. Infoprint Server uses the SAF interface to route authorization requests to the external security manager.

Using the SAF interface for Infoprint Server security delivers the following benefits:

- Dynamic change of security profiles
- Single image of security information
- Simple introduction of security philosophy
- Improved auditability
- Improved protection

This chapter provides general information about RACF security. It demonstrates how to establish SAF security for Infoprint Server, and explains how to set up security for the Printer Inventory, common message log, and operator commands. You can specify which users can read and update the Printer Inventory, view messages in the common message log, and start and stop Infoprint Server daemons.
2.1 Security processing

Security processing within z/OS UNIX differs in many ways from standard security processing in MVS. MVS resources like users and data are protected by RACF profiles stored in the RACF database. RACF refers to the profiles when deciding which users should be permitted to protected system resources. Security administration is done with RACF commands or RACF ISPF panels.

2.1.1 MVS security versus z/OS UNIX security

z/OS UNIX users are defined as MVS users and they are administrated by RACF profiles. The security information for files and directories in a hierarchical file system is stored within the file system itself in a file security packet (FSP). HFS files and directories are protected by permission bit information which is kept in the FSP. Administration of file security is performed by using z/OS UNIX shell commands, or ISHELL menu options. Figure 2-1 illustrates MVS security versus z/OS UNIX security.

![Figure 2-1 MVS versus UNIX System Services](image)

As shown in the figure, z/OS UNIX users do not work with data sets; instead, they work with files and directories. z/OS UNIX users do not have to be aware that their data is located physically in an HFS data set. All they see is the hierarchical file structure made up of multiple mounted HFS data sets. The FSPs are maintained by z/OS UNIX commands. RACF data set profiles cannot be used to protect z/OS UNIX files and directories.

User administration is similar for regular MVS users and z/OS UNIX users. Every user must present a password when logging on to the system. z/OS UNIX uses a UID and GID for each user, and this information is stored in RACF profiles together with the user ID and password.
information. The concept of a “superuser” in z/OS UNIX is similar to a RACF security administrator.

UNIX systems incorporate a concept of users and groups similar to that of RACF. A user UNIX identifier (UID) is zero (0) for a superuser, or any other number for normal users. The superuser has unlimited authority within UNIX System Services. User numbers do not have to be unique and it is possible (though not recommended) for several users to share the same UID. UNIX sees these users as being the same entity, and they receive the same level of authorization.

Users are all related to a group. Groups allow authority to be controlled in a more economical way, in that giving access to a group is significantly easier than giving access to several hundred users. If you want to distinguish between administrators and operators, you need to define groups.

You can choose any names for these groups, however, AOPOPER and AOPADMIN are frequently used in the literature. Define these groups to RACF with a z/OS UNIX group identifier (GID) to protect access to the Printer Inventory, the common message log, and Infoprint Server operator command.

AOPADMIN This group is for Infoprint Server administrators, who can view and update the Printer Inventory and view all messages in the common message log.

AOPOPER This group is for Infoprint Server operators, who can start and stop Infoprint Server daemons.

2.1.2 File and directory permission bits

Permission bit information is stored in the file security packet (FSP) within each file and directory. Permission bits allow you to specify read authority, write authority, execute authority, or search authority.

When an access check is to be done, the PFS calls SAF with the type of check that is being requested. SAF passes these to the security product, which extracts user information from the current security environment and compares it against the access control that is stored within the FSP. Figure 2-2 on page 14 illustrates the FSP used by RACF for authorization.
2.1.3 File security packet (FSP)

Each z/OS UNIX file and directory has a file security packet (FSP) associated with it to control access, as shown in Figure 2-3 on page 15. The FSP is created when a file or directory is created. The FSP is stored in the file system for the life of the file or directory until the file or directory is deleted, at which time the FSP is also deleted.

The FSP consists of:
- File owner UID
- File owner GID
- File mode, as explained in the following section

File mode

The file mode consists of the following bits and the permission bits:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access</th>
<th>Permission for File</th>
<th>Permission for Directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Read (r)</td>
<td>Permission to read or print the contents.</td>
<td>Permission to read, but not search, the contents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write (w)</td>
<td>Permission to change, add to, or delete from the contents.</td>
<td>Permission to change, add, or delete directory entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute (x)</td>
<td>Permission to run the file. This permission is used for executable files.</td>
<td>Permission to search the directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

700  owner (7=rwx)  group (0=---)  other (0=---)
755  owner (7=rwx)  group (5=r-x)  other (5=r-x)

Figure 2-2  File security packet (FSP) used by RACF for authorization

SetUID  This bit only relates to executable files. If on, it causes the UID of the user executing the file to be set to the file's UID.
SetGID  This bit only relates to executable files. If on, it causes the GID of the user executing the file to be set to the file's GID.
Sticky bit  This bit only relates to executable files. If on, it causes the file to be retained in memory for performance reasons. The implementation of this varies between platforms:
- In z/OS UNIX, it means programs are loaded from an LPA (or LNKLST as per normal MVS program search) instead of an HFS file.
- For a directory, the sticky bit causes UNIX to permit files in a directory or subdirectories to be deleted or renamed only by the owner of the file, by the owner of the directory, or by a superuser.
**File mode permission bits**

The file mode also has the file permission bits, consisting of:

- Owner read/write/execute permissions
- Group read/write/execute permissions
- Other (or all users) read/write/execute permissions

Where:

- **r** Read (r) access to both files and directories.
- **w** Write (w) access to both files and directories.
- **x** Execute (x) has a different meaning for files and directories:
  - For an executable file, an access of x means that the user can execute the file.
  - For a directory, an access of x means the user can search the directory.

**Note:** In z/OS UNIX, these three permissions are not hierarchical. For example, a user with write permission who does not have read permission, can only write over existing data or add data to a file, and cannot look at the contents of the file or print the file. Similarly, write and read permission does not allow a user to execute a file or search a directory.

Both read (r) and execute (x) are required in order to execute a shell script. In order to access HFS files, a user needs the following:

- Search (x) permission to all the directories in the path name of files the user wants to access
- Write permission to directories where the user will be creating new files and directories
- Read and write permission, or read or write permission as appropriate, to files for access
- Execute (x) permission for an executable file

**Extended attributes**

Another section of the FSP, which is specific to the z/OS UNIX implementation, is called Extended Attributes (extattr); see Figure 2-3. It contains flags to mark HFS program files as APF-authorized and program-controlled. A shell command `extattr` is used to manipulate these bits.

![Figure 2-3 File security packet (FSP)](image-url)
2.1.4 Setting permissions for directories and executable files

The system assigns default permission bits for files and directories at creation time. The settings depend on the type of command or facility that is used. When the executable file is a set-user-ID or set-group-ID file, the file owner’s UID or GID must be defined to the Security Access Facility (SAF). The aopsetup shell script helps you to set up the correct z/OS UNIX permissions for Infoprint Server directories and executable files before you start Infoprint Server daemons for the first time. Also, you should rerun aopsetup whenever you change files in one of the Infoprint Server directories.

The aopsetup shell script sets permissions so that this directory is readable and writeable only by members of the RACF group for Infoprint Server administrators (AOPADMIN) and users with an effective UID of 0. If you specify a different directory in the base-directory attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (aopd.conf), aopsetup creates that directory instead of the /var/Printsrv directory.

If Infoprint Server is installed in a different directory, then an environment variable called INSTALL_DIR needs to be set to the directory where Infoprint Server was installed.

The aopsetup shell script requires two positional arguments:

```
aopsetup operator-group administrator-group
```

Where:

- **operator-group** This is the name of the RACF group you created for Infoprint Server operators. The suggested RACF group name is AOPOPER. However, you might have used a different name for this group. This argument is required.

- **administrator-group** This is the name of the RACF group you created for Infoprint Server administrators. The suggested RACF group name is AOPADMIN. However, you might have used a different name for this group. This argument is required.

2.2 Summary of UNIX commands

Much of the z/OS UNIX activity dealing with protected Infoprint Server resources involves creating, changing, and deleting files and directories. To protect the data in a file from unauthorized users, the system controls who can change the file access. You cannot use RACF commands or panels to set the file mode, UID, or GID.

An alternative is to use the ISHELL menus. They may be more user-friendly for people who are not familiar with UNIX, and they provide help information.

**chown command**

To change the owner (UID) of a file, the superuser can enter a `chown` command. The `chown` command also turns off the set-user-ID bit and set-group-ID bit of the named files and directories.

```
chown [-fhR] owner [:group] pathname ...
```
chgrp command
To change the group (GID) of a file, the superuser or the file owner can enter a chgrp command, specifying either a RACF group name or a GID. The file owner must have the new group as his or her group, or one of his or her supplementary groups. The chgrp command also turns off the set-user-ID bit and set-group-ID bit of the named files and directories.

chgrp [-fhR] group pathname ...

chmod command
To change the file mode of a file, the superuser or the file owner can enter a chmod command.

chmod [-fhR] mode pathname

The chmod command is used to make a change to the file mode mask of a file or directory, as follows:

- The z/OS UNIX shell command chmod u-x,g+r,o+r deletes execute (x) from the owner (u for user) permissions, adds read (r) to the group (g) permissions, and adds read (r) to the other (o) permissions.
- The same effect can be achieved with chmod u=rw,go=r which sets the owner (u) mask to read/write (rw), and sets the group and other (go) mask to read (r). When the equal (=) sign is used, it turns on the bits specified and turns off all other bits.
- The command chmod a=rwx sets on the read, write, and execute bits for all (a) users, which includes the owner, group, and other.
- An equivalent command is chmod rwx in which the a (all users) is implied.
- In the command chmod go-rwx, rwx is turned off for group and other.
- An alternative form chmod u=rwx sets rwx on for the owner (u) mask, and turns off all other bits.
- The command chmod u+s shows how to turn on the SetUID bit. The s stands for set, and the u stands for UID. To turn on the SetGID bit, use chmod g+s. To turn on the sticky bit, use chmod +t.

Using octal notation with chmod
Octal notation can be used on the chmod command instead of the symbolic notation. With octal notation, each set of three bits is represented in a single octal digit. For example, a permission of rwx would be represented as the octal digit 7, which is the sum of the 4 for read (r), the 2 for write (w), and 1 for execute/search (x), as follows:

- In the command chmod 644, the octal 6 sets read and write (4+2) for the file owner, and sets read (4) for group and other users.
- The command chmod 777 sets on read/write/execute (4+2+1) for the owner, group, and other users.
- The command chmod 700 sets on the read, write, and execute bits (4+2+1) for the owner, and gives no access to group and other users.
- In the last command chmod 4700 we see how to set the set UID, set GID, and sticky bits. This is done by using four octal digits, where the first digit represents the set UID, set GID, and sticky bits. Here, SetUID is the left-most bit (4), SetGID is the middle bit (2), and the sticky bit is the right-most bit (1).
2.3 Summary of RACF commands

Much of the RACF activity dealing with protected Infoprint Server resources involves creating, changing, and deleting general resource profiles.

To create a resource profile, use the RDEFINE command. Generally, after you have created a profile, you then create an access list for the profile using the PERMIT command. For example:

```
RDEFINE class_name profile_name UACC(NONE)
PERMIT profile_name CLASS(class_name) ID(user or group) ACC(access_authority)
```

To remove the entry for a user or group from an access list, issue the PERMIT command with the DELETE operand instead of the ACCESS operand.

```
PERMIT profile_name CLASS(class_name) ID(user or group) DELETE
```

If you want to change a profile, for example, to change UACC from NONE to READ, use the RALTER command:

```
RALTER class_name profile_name UACC(READ)
```

To delete a resource profile, use the RDELETE command. For example:

```
RDELETE class_name profile_name UACC(READ)
```

You can copy an access list from one profile to another by specifying the FROM operand on the PERMIT command:

```
PERMIT profile_name CLASS(class_name)
FROM(existing-profile_name) FCLASS(class_name)
```

You can copy information from one profile to another by specifying the FROM operand on the RDEFINE or RALTER command:

```
RDEFINE class_name profile_name
FROM(existing-profile_name) FCLASS(class_name)
```

Note: Do not plan to do this if you are using resource group names.

To list the names of profiles in a particular class, use the SEARCH command. The following command lists the profiles in the PRINTSRV class:

```
SEARCH CLASS(PRINTSRV)
```

2.4 Establishing SAF security with RACF

To accomplish security through SAF with RACF, you can do the following:

1. Activate generic processing before defining profiles, using the SETROPTS command.
2. Define profiles to protect the resources in the appropriate classes, using the RDEFINE command. (Classes are already defined for RACF. You must define them for other security products.)
3. Begin with generic profiles for broad access to resources, and then define generic or discrete profiles that are more restrictive.
4. Permit users to access appropriate profiles in each class with the necessary access levels, using the PERMIT command.

5. Activate the classes, using the SETROPTS command.

**Tip:** To limit access, use the AOPSTART JCL procedure instead of the `aopstart` command to start Infoprint Server because you can associate a user ID with the AOPSTART JCL procedure.

### 2.4.1 Activating the FACILITY class

The FACILITY class can be used for a wide variety of purposes depending on the products installed on your system. If the FACILITY class is active, users might need access to particular resources to perform specific tasks. Therefore, they must have access based on the profiles protecting those resources.

For example, if you want IP PrintWay extended mode to write System Management Facilities (SMF) type 6 records, you must authorize the user ID that starts Infoprint Server daemons to write SMF records. To do this, give the user ID that starts Infoprint Server daemons READ access to the BPX.SMF profile in the FACILITY class.

You can control who can use certain UNIX functions when you define RACF profiles with UACC(NONE) to protect the appropriate BPX.* resources in the FACILITY class. Generally, authorized users need at least READ access to the BPX.* resources in order to use the UNIX function.

For security reasons, you may need to define the following FACILITY class profiles.

**BPX.FILEATTR.APF**

This controls which users are allowed to set the APF-authorized attribute in a z/OS UNIX file. This authority allows the user to create a program that will run APF-authorized. This is similar to the authority of allowing a programmer to update SYS1.LINKLIB or SYS1.LPALIB.

**BPX.FILEATTR.PROGCTL**

This controls which users are allowed to set the program control attribute. Programs marked with this attribute can execute in server address spaces that run with a high level of authority.

**BPX.JOBNAME**

This controls which users are allowed to set their own job names by using the `_BPX_JOBNAME` environment variable or the inheritance structure on spawn. Users with READ or higher permissions to this profile can define their own job names.

**BPX.SMF**

This checks whether the caller attempting to cut an SMF record is allowed to write an SMF record. It also tests if an SMF type or subtype is being recorded.

**BPX.SUPERUSER**

This allows users to switch to superuser authority.

**BPX.UNLIMITED.OUTPUT**

This allows users to use the `BPX_UNLIMITED_OUTPUT` environment variable to override the default spooled output limits for processes.
2.4.2 Activating the JESSPOOL class

Because Infoprint Central lets users work with print jobs, you can use RACF to provide access to data sets that reside on spool. Using RACF allows users other than the owner of a data set to read, copy, print, or delete sensitive job data. When the JESSPOOL class is active, RACF ensures that only authorized users obtain access to job data sets on spool. Authorization to job data sets is provided through RACF user profiles. If there is no profile for a data set, only the user that created the data set can access, modify, or delete it.

SYSOUT application program interface (SAPI) applications, which are usually started tasks that process output to special devices (for example IP Printer, SNA Printer, PSF Printer, or E-Mail destinations), require at least UPDATE access to the spool data sets they process. If your installation has SAPI applications, and you activate the JESSPOOL class, you must either ensure that the SAPI applications have UPDATE access to appropriate JESSPOOL profiles, or define the applications as a started procedure with the trusted attribute. You can define them either in the STARTED class or in the RACF started procedures table. Otherwise, the SAPI applications cannot process output.

If you activate the JESSPOOL class in your installation, you must give IP PrintWay extended mode UPDATE access to profiles in this class so that IP PrintWay extended mode can select output data sets from the JES spool.

Examples

To define a broad profile to protect all print jobs on node N1, enter this RACF command:

    RDEFINE JESSPOOL (N1.*.*.*.D*.*) UACC(NONE)

To give the AOPSTC user UPDATE access to the broad profile, enter these RACF commands:

    PERMIT N1.*.*.*.D*.* CLASS(JESSPOOL) ID(AOPSTC) ACCESS(UPDATE)
    SETROPTS RACLIST(JESSPOOL) REFRESH

Note: The profiles that already exist in the JESSPOOL class should be suitable for use with Infoprint Central. However, be sure to give Infoprint Central users the appropriate access to those profiles

The JESSPOOL profile-name is a 6-part name with the following format:

    local-nodename.userid.jobname.jobid.Dsiddsname

Where:

- **local-nodename** This is the NJE node ID of the JES2 or JES3 subsystem.
- **userid** This is the z/OS user ID of the job owner. For some output data sets that Print Interface or NetSpool allocates on the JES spool, this is either the user ID of the user who started the Infoprint Server daemons or BPXAS.
- **jobname** This is the job name. For some data sets that Print Interface or NetSpool allocates on the JES spool, this is the user ID of the user who started the Infoprint Server daemons or BPXAS.
- **Dsiddsname** This is the data set ID number that identifies the data set prefixed by the required letter D. The D character in the fifth qualifier of the profile

For a complete list see z/OS UNIX System Services Planning, GA22-7800, in “Setting up the BPX.* FACILITY class profiles”.

name distinguishes the data set's profile from other JESSPOOL profiles.

**dsname**  
This is the data set name.

Table 2-1 lists the minimum access required to profiles in the JESSPOOL class.

### Table 2-1  Minimum access required to profiles in the JESSPOOL class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action in Infoprint Central</th>
<th>Access to this profile in the JESSPOOL class</th>
<th>This minimum access is required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change priority</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>ALTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>ALTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit properties</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>ALTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>ALTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>ALTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>ALTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View log</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View properties</td>
<td>nodeid.userid.jobname.jobid.Ddsid.dsname</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2.4.3 Activating the OPERCMDS class

Infoprint Central lets users work with printers that IP PrintWay controls (called IP PrintWay printers) and with printers that PSF for z/OS controls (called PSF printers). You can protect IP PrintWay and PSF printers with profiles in the OPERCMDS class and PRINTSRV class.

You can control which groups of users can issue commands. Use RACF to authorize or restrict users from entering some or all commands, or specific variations of commands, or the consoles from which commands can be entered. To control the use of operator commands, create profiles in the OPERCMDS class that enable RACF command authorization.

**Tip:** The profiles you have already defined in the OPERCMDS class to protect data sets on the JES spool should be suitable for use with Infoprint Central. If profiles already exist in the OPERCMDS class, give Infoprint Central users and the AOPOPER group the appropriate access to those profiles.

Infoprint Central does not display or modify TSU print jobs because they are numerous and users typically do not print them. The minimum accesses needed to OPERCMDS class profiles are listed in Table 2-2.

### Table 2-2  Minimum access required to profiles in the OPERCMDS class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action in Infoprint Central</th>
<th>Access to this profile in the OPERCMDS class</th>
<th>This minimum access is required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change priority</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.MODIFY.U</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unlike IP Printway printers, which are protected by the PRINTSRV class, you can define profiles in the OPERCMDS class to restrict who can perform actions on PSF printers. The actions and minimum accesses required to profiles in the OPERCMDS class are listed in Table 2-3. Profiles in the OPERCMDS class apply only to PSF printers and not to IP PrintWay printers.

**Tip:** In JES3 environments, you can also define profiles that apply just to one printer by specifying the printer name in the last qualifier of the profile.

### Table 2-3 Printer actions and minimum access required to profiles in the OPERCMDS class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action in Infoprint Central</th>
<th>OPERCMDS class profile in JES2</th>
<th>OPERCMDS class profile in JES3</th>
<th>Minimum access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.MODIFY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit properties</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.MODIFY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.DISPLAY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.MODIFY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.MODIFY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.MODIFY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View log</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.DISPLAY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View properties</td>
<td>jesname.MODIFY.BATOUT jesname.MODIFY.STCOUT jesname.DISPLAY.U</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4.4 Activating the PRINTSRV class

The third RACF class used by Infoprint Server is PRINTSRV. If PRINTSRV is activated, you can define any profile in the PRINTSRV class. You can select any name for the profile that RACF allows. However, do not start the name with AOP, because profiles starting with AOP may conflict with profile names that IBM uses now or in the future. Profile names can be up to 64 characters in length. Table 2-4 lists the printer actions and minimum accesses required to profiles in the PRINTSRV class.

You can decide how printers are supposed to be protected by the PRINTSRV class. For example, you can define a separate profile to protect each printer, or you can define one profile to protect a group of printers or all printers. If you want to authorize different users to work with printers in different locations, define separate profiles for printers in each location. For example, you could define one profile for all printers in Poughkeepsie, and another profile for all printers in New York. If you want to authorize the same group of users to work with all printers, you need to define only one profile.

You must specify the name of the RACF resource profile in the operator-security-profile attribute of the printer definition that controls who can work with this printer using Infoprint Central. This attribute applies only to IP PrintWay extended mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action in Infoprint Central</th>
<th>OPERCMDS class profile in JES2</th>
<th>OPERCMDS class profile in JES3</th>
<th>Minimum access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interrupt</td>
<td>jesname.INTERRUPT.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.RESTART.DEV.dev</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>jesname.HALT.DEV</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ping and run traceroute</td>
<td>jesname.DISPLAY.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.DISPLAY.DEV</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat</td>
<td>jesname.REPEAT.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.REPEAT.DEV.dev</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset</td>
<td>jesname.DISPLAY.DEV</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space - backward</td>
<td>jesname.BACKSP.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.RESTART.DEV.dev</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space - forward</td>
<td>jesname.FORWARD.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.RESTART.DEV.dev</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a printer</td>
<td>jesname.START.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.CALL_WTR</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jesname.START.DEV.dev</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jesname.VARY.DEV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop a printer (cancel the job)</td>
<td>jesname.STOP.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.RESTART.DEV.dev</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jesname.CANCEL.DEV</td>
<td>jesname.RESTART.DEV.dev</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Properties</td>
<td>jesname.DISPLAY.D</td>
<td>jesname.DISPLAY.D</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4.4 Activating the PRINTSRV class

The third RACF class used by Infoprint Server is PRINTSRV. If PRINTSRV is activated, you can define any profile in the PRINTSRV class. You can select any name for the profile that RACF allows. However, do not start the name with AOP, because profiles starting with AOP may conflict with profile names that IBM uses now or in the future. Profile names can be up to 64 characters in length. Table 2-4 lists the printer actions and minimum accesses required to profiles in the PRINTSRV class.

You can decide how printers are supposed to be protected by the PRINTSRV class. For example, you can define a separate profile to protect each printer, or you can define one profile to protect a group of printers or all printers. If you want to authorize different users to work with printers in different locations, define separate profiles for printers in each location. For example, you could define one profile for all printers in Poughkeepsie, and another profile for all printers in New York. If you want to authorize the same group of users to work with all printers, you need to define only one profile.

You must specify the name of the RACF resource profile in the operator-security-profile attribute of the printer definition that controls who can work with this printer using Infoprint Central. This attribute applies only to IP PrintWay extended mode.

Table 2-4  Printer actions and minimum access required to profiles in the PRINTSRV class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action in Infoprint Central</th>
<th>OPERCMDS class profile in JES</th>
<th>Minimum access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change forms (PSF only)</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change job selection (PSF only)</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find and display printers</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrupt (PSF only)</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you define multiple profiles in the OPERCMDS, JESSPOOL, and PRINTSRV classes that apply to a print job, users must have access to the profiles in all classes to perform an action. However, Infoprint Central lets these users perform all actions on their own print jobs, regardless of whether they have access to the profiles that protect their print jobs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action in Infoprint Central</th>
<th>OPERCMDS class profile in JES</th>
<th>Minimum access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pause (PSF only)</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ping and run traceroute</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect - IP PrintWay printers only</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore - IP PrintWay printers only</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space (PSF only)</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a printer</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop a printer and cancel the job</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop a printer</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View log</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Properties</td>
<td>Profile specified in Printer Inventory</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you define multiple profiles in the OPERCMDS, JESSPOOL, and PRINTSRV classes that apply to a print job, users must have access to the profiles in all classes to perform an action. However, Infoprint Central lets these users perform all actions on their own print jobs, regardless of whether they have access to the profiles that protect their print jobs.

**Restriction:** The AOP.PRIORITY profile is an exception. If you define the AOP.PRIORITY profile, users must have UPDATE access to this profile to change the priority of their own print jobs.

After you have activated the PRINTSRV class in RACF, a member of the AOPOPPer group and AOPADMIN group should also have a proper authorization in the profiles in PRINTSRV, as explained in the next section.

**AOP.ADMINISTRATOR**

The AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile in the PRINTSRV class replaced the AOPADMIN profile in the FACILITY class. After you define the AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile, Infoprint Server no longer checks the AOPADMIN profile.

The AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile has two access levels:

- **READ**
  - This level allows users to view the Printer Inventory using ISPF panels, Infoprint Central, or the Printer Inventory Definition Utility (PIDU). Users do not need READ access simply to list names of printer definitions with the `lpstat` command or with Infoprint Port Monitor.

- **UPDATE**
  - This level allows users to update the Printer Inventory using ISPF panels or PIDU, and lets users view the Printer Inventory using Infoprint Central.
AOP.NETSPOOL
You can define the AOP.NETSPOOL profile to restrict who can display, start, and stop NetSpool LUs. If a user has UPDATE access to the AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile, the AOP.NETSPOOL profile is not checked.

READ          This allows users to find and display LUs. The user can also view the log.
CONTROL      This allows users to display, start, and stop NetSpool LUs.

AOP.PRIORITY
If you define the AOP.PRIORITY profile, the job submitter and any other user with the required access to profiles in the OPERCMDS and JESSPOOL classes and an access level of READ in the AOP.PRIORITY profile can change the priority of a print job.

AOP.DAEMON
Infoprint Central does not allow users to start and stop daemons. However, you can define profile AOP.DAEMON to restrict who can display daemons. If you define profile AOP.DAEMON, an Infoprint Central user needs an access level of READ in the AOP.PRIORITY profile to display the status of daemons.

2.5 Controlling UNIX System Service environment
When you use IP PrintWay extended mode, you may need to control the amount of resources consumed. The resource limits for the majority of z/OS UNIX users such as Infoprint Server are specified in the BPXPRMxx PARMLIB member. Instead of assigning superuser authority to Infoprint Server so it can exceed BPXPRMxx limits, you can individually set limits for Infoprint Server daemons.

2.5.1 User profiles with OMVS segments
All users and programs that need access to z/OS UNIX System Service must have a RACF user profile defined, with an OMVS segment which has at least a UID specified. If the user ID assigned to the AOPSTART and AOPSTOP procedures is not a z/OS UNIX user, the Infoprint Server daemons will not start or stop, and you might not receive any error messages.

A RACF user profile has a segment called OMVS for z/OS UNIX support. A user ID must have an OMVS segment defined in order to use UNIX System Service. This segment has three fields, as explained here:

UID          This is a number from 0 to 16,777,215 that identifies a z/OS UNIX user. The user assigned to work with Infoprint Server must have a UID defined.
Home        This is the name of a directory in the file system. This field is optional.
Program     This is the name of a program that will be started for the user when the user begins a Z/OS UNIX session.

The RACF group also has a segment called OMVS to define z/OS UNIX groups. It contains only one field, as explained here:

GID          A number from 0 to 16,777,215 that identifies a Z/OS UNIX group.

You should define user AOPSTC with default group AOPOPER. You can select any name for the user ID, or you can alter an existing user ID to be a z/OS UNIX ID. You can select any
default group that has an OMVS segment and a GID. The user ID must be connected to the
default group.

**Infoprint Server user ID and group ID**

```
ADDUSER AOPSTC OMVS(UID(user-identifier) HOME(''/u/aopstc')
                     PROGRAM(''/bin/sh')) DFLTGRP(AOPOPER) NOPASSWORD
```

**User profile**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>Default Group</th>
<th>Connect Groups</th>
<th>TSO</th>
<th>QFP</th>
<th>OMVS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AOPSTC</td>
<td>AOPOPER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
ADDGROUP (AOPADMIN) OMVS(GID(group-identifier))
```

**Group profile**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groupid</th>
<th>Superior Group</th>
<th>Connected Users</th>
<th>OMVS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AOPADMIN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
ADDGROUP (AOPOPER) OMVS(GID(group-identifier))
CONNECT (AOPSTC) GROUP(AOPOPER)
```

**Group profile**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groupid</th>
<th>Superior Group</th>
<th>Connected Users</th>
<th>OMVS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AOPOPER</td>
<td>AOPSTC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You need to define two groups to RACF to protect access to the Printer Inventory, the
common message log, and Infoprint Server operator commands. You can choose any names
for these groups. If you do not want to distinguish between administrators and operators, you
need to define only one group.

**AOPADMIN**

This group is for Infoprint Server administrators, who can view and update
the Printer Inventory and view all messages in the common message log.

**AOPOPER**

This group is for Infoprint Server operators, who can start and stop Infoprint
Server daemons.

Define Infoprint Server administrators, operators, and other users whom you want to read the
Printer Inventory to RACF as z/OS UNIX users. Connect Infoprint Server administrators and
operators to the appropriate group.

### 2.5.2 Setting limits for z/OS UNIX users

You can control the amount of resources consumed by certain z/OS UNIX users by setting
individual limits for these users. Instead of assigning superuser authority to Infoprint Server
you can individually set higher limits for the user assigned to Infoprint Server. Setting user
limits allows you to minimize the number of assignments of superuser authority at your
installation and reduces your security risk.

**CPUTIMEMAX**

MAXCPUTIME is the time limit (in seconds) for processes that were
created by rlogin and other daemons. The CPUTIMEMAX parameter
overrides the MAXCPUTIME parameter.
ASSIZEMAX  MAXASSIZE is the maximum region size (in byte) for an address space. Use the RACF ADDUSER or ALTUSER command to specify the ASSIZEMAX limit on a per-user basis. The ASSIZEMAX parameter overrides the MAXASSIZE parameter.

FILEPROCMAX  Use MAXFILEPROC to determine the number of character-special files, /dev/fdxx, that a single process can have open concurrently. The FILEPROCMAX parameter overrides the MAXFILEPROC parameter.

PROCUSERMAX  MAXPROCUSER specifies the maximum number of processes that a single user (that is, with the same UID) can have concurrently active. The PROCUSERMAX parameter overrides the MAXPROCUSER parameter.

THREADSMAX  MAXTHREADS is the maximum number of threads that a single process can have active concurrently. The THREADSMAX parameter overrides the MAXTHREADS parameter.

---

OMVS INFORMATION
-----------------
UID= 0000000100
HOME= /u/aopstc
PROGRAM= /bin/sh
CPUTIMEMAX= NONE
ASSIZEMAX= NONE
FILEPROCMAX= NONE
PROCUSERMAX= NONE
THREADSMAX= NONE
MMAPAREAMAX= NONE

Figure 2-5  Fields in OMVS segment

2.5.3 Controlling the number of processes and threads

The MAXPROCSYS statement specifies the maximum number of processes that z/OS UNIX System Services will allow to be active at the same time in the system. You may need to adjust the values for the MAXPROCSYS parameters in the BPXPRMxx parmlib member. Each component of Infoprint Server (that is, Print Interface, NetSpool, Transform, IP Printway extended mode, and Infoprint Central) may create additional processes, depending on the workload. Set the PROCUSERMAX to a reasonable value.

Threads provide support for multiple separate units of dispatchable work within a process. A z/OS UNIX thread can be compared with an MVS task. Threads allow for concurrent and asynchronous processing without the additional overhead associated with creating a new address space.

The MAXTHREADS value specifies the maximum number of pthread_create threads (including those running, queued, and exited but not detached) that a single process can have currently active. Specifying a value of 0 prevents applications from using pthread_create. The range is 0 to 100000; the default is 200.

The MAXTHREADTASKS value specifies the maximum number of MVS tasks created with pthread_create that a single user may have concurrently active in a process. The range is 0 to 32768; the default is 50.

Figure 2-6 on page 28 shows the difference between these two keywords, which is that MAXTHREADS specifies the limit for how many threads a process can have active. This
number includes the number of threads that are executing on MVS tasks and the number that are waiting for execution. MAXTHREADTASKS specifies the limit for how many MVS tasks can be created per process to schedule threads. This number limits the number of threads that can be executing at the same time in a process. In the pictured example, a process has created five threads, but only three MVS tasks, so two threads will be queued until a task becomes available.

**Note:** Infoprint Server allows customers to configure the MAXTHREADTASKS limit for programs that might create numerous concurrent threads. Some Infoprint Server programs require a minimum number of tasks to operate correctly.

Therefore, IBM recommends against specifying a value less than 32 for the AOPxxx_MAXTHREADTASKS or AOP_MAXTHREADTASKS environment variable.

If you do not specify either the AOPxxx_MAXTHREADTASKS environment variable for a program or the AOP_MAXTHREADTASKS environment variable, Infoprint Server uses a default value.

**Table 2-5  Environment variable**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment variable</th>
<th>Program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AOPHINVD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aophinvd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPIPPD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aopipdxp / aopippd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPLPD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aoplpd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPNETD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aopnetd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPSDBD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aopsdbd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPSSID_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aopssid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPSUBD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aopsubd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOPWSMD_MAXTHREADTASKS</td>
<td>aopwsmd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Each concurrent task requires the operating system to allocate additional storage, some of which must be below the 16 MByte line. If there are many current tasks, storage can become exhausted, which might cause the address space to end. Therefore, use caution in defining the AOPxxx_MAXTHREADTASKS and AOP_MAXTHREADTASKS environment.
Printer definitions

This chapter describes how to define printers in the Infoprint Server Printer Inventory. The Printer Inventory is a set of files in the z/OS UNIX file system that are maintained by the system administrator. The UNIX file system can be either HFS or zFS.

Printer Inventory is the central place for storing all information about printers known to all Infoprint Server subcomponents (Print Interface, IP PrintWay, and NetSpool). This means that the system administrator needs to define the printers only once.

The system administrator can also specify printer configuration information used by PSF in the same Printer Inventory, instead of in the PSF startup procedure or in a PSF exit. As a result, you can change PSF configuration information more easily because you only need to restart the printer whose configuration has changed.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- Printer Inventory objects
- Printer Inventory Definition Utility (pidu)
- Adding printer definitions for:
  - IP PrintWay printers with different Protocols (LPR, IPP, VTAM, e-mail, direct socket)
  - PSF printer
  - General printer
- Displaying defined printers
- Modifying defined printers
3.1 Printer Inventory overview

The Printer Inventory Manager of Infoprint Server controls the Printer Inventory. When Infoprint Server is started, it will create empty database files if they do not already exist in the directory pointed to by the base-directory attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (aopd.conf).

**Note:** The printer Inventory cannot be shared by Infoprint Server running the same or different level on other systems.

Because a Printer Inventory might contain hundreds or thousands of printer definitions, changing information in many printer definitions can be time-consuming. Therefore, you might want to create objects in the Printer Inventory called components and include them in printer definitions.

You can create different types of objects in the printer inventory, as explained here:

- **Printway-fss objects**
  These contain information for an IP Printway basic mode FSS.

- **psf-fss objects**
  These contain configuration information for PSF for z/OS.

- **fsa objects**
  These contain information for an IP Printway basic mode FSA or a PSF for z/OS FSA.

- **allocation objects**
  These contain information used when Infoprint Server allocates a data set.

- **netspool-eof-rules objects**
  These contain information used by NetSpool to determine the end of a file (eof).

- **netspool-options objects**
  These contain information for additional NetSpool options.

- **printway-options objects**
  These contain information for additional IP PrintWay options.

- **processing objects**
  These contain information used while Infoprint Server processes a print job.

- **protocol objects**
  These contain information for the printer protocol being used.

- **printer objects**
  These contain information about printer and printer components.

- **printer-pool objects**
  These contain information about groups of printer definitions that you want to broadcast data to (applies only to NetSpool).

- **job-selection-rules objects**
  These contain rules that IP Printway extended mode uses to determine which print job to select from the JES spool for printing.

### 3.1.1 Components

A **component** contains attributes that are common to several printer definitions. You can define one or more components for each section of a printer definition, such as the Allocation section and the Processing section shown in Figure 3-1 on page 33. All attributes defined by these components are summed up to form a printer definition.
Note: Creating components is optional. Some printer definitions in the Printer Inventory might include components, while other printer definitions might not. Whether or not you use components, you can use the Printer Inventory Definition utility (PIDU) to make changes to many printer definitions at one time.

![Figure 3-1 IP PrintWay Printer Definition panel showing Allocation, Processing and Components](image)

### Component names
Components are named and contain attributes (such as Data format) that Print Interface, NetSpool, and IP PrintWay use to process data and validate that a job can print on this printer. Component definitions are not required; you can also use the Custom values field to specify these attributes. If you do not specify a component or custom values, default values are used.

Because a Printer Inventory might contain hundreds or thousands of printer definitions, changing information in many printer definitions can be time-consuming. Therefore, you might want to create additional objects in the Printer Inventory called components and include them in printer definitions. Consider creating components when several printer definitions share the same attributes.

To use components:
- Specify the shared attributes in a component, instead of specifying the same attributes in many printer definitions.
- Include the component in all printer definitions to which those attributes apply.

### Creating components
To create a component, place the cursor on the Component name field, as shown in Figure 3-1. Press Enter to do one of the following:
- Create custom value fields for the new component
- View custom values and values specified in the named component
- Specify attributes that are not specified in the named component
- Override attributes that are specified in the named component
3.1.2 Infoprint Server components

In this manner you can create a single set of printer definitions that all the components of Infoprint Server use. Components of Infoprint Server where components can be used are:

- NetSpool
- Print Interface
- IP PrintWay
- The SNMP subagent
- Infoprint Central
- PSF for z/OS, as an option

Note: When you create components, you do not need to specify every attribute in that component. Instead, you might want to specify some attributes in the printer definitions. For example, the Protocol component contains an attribute that defines the IP address of the remote printer. Because the IP address is usually unique for each remote printer, you could omit the IP address from the component and instead specify it in the printer definition.

When you include components in a printer definition, you can override some of the attributes specified in the components by specifying a different value in the printer definition itself.

3.2 Utility programs

The Printer Inventory Definition Utility (PIDU) program can be used to manage objects in the Printer Inventory. Inventory objects include printer definitions, printer pool definitions, components, FSS definitions, FSA definitions, and job selection rules.

The PIDU program is useful for creating and editing many objects at the same time. Also, it allows you to perform functions that you cannot perform from Infoprint Server ISPF panels. For example, you can export or dump objects in the Printer Inventory to a file, and you can perform more powerful searches of the Printer Inventory.

You can use the `pidu` program as a batch job from TSO by using the AOPBATCH utility. The PIDU program is useful for creating and editing many objects at the same time.

You can run the PIDU program in two ways:

- From the z/OS UNIX shell using the `pidu` command
- As a batch job

When using the PIDU program, you can specify the following PIDU commands to manage objects in the Printer Inventory:

- create
- delete
- display
- dump
- export
- force-create
- list
- modify
- rename
3.2.1 Using the AOPBATCH utility

The AOPBATCH utility program is provided by Infoprint Server. AOPBATCH lets you use MVS JCL to run the pidu utility. IBM recommends that you use AOPBATCH instead of BPXBATCH to run pidu provided by Infoprint Server because AOPBATCH sets default values for the PATH, LIBPATH, and NLSPATH environment variables that are suitable for installations that installed Infoprint Server files in default locations. Also, AOPBATCH lets stdin be read from a DD statement and lets stdout and stderr be written to a DD statement.

With AOPBATCH, you can specify the optional DD statements to set up the z/OS UNIX environment and to allocate the STDERR, STDIN, and STDOUT files.

**Note:** The STDIN, STDOUT, and STDERR statements are suitable only for text data.

Figure 3-2 shows how to use the AOPBATCH program. The example JCL invokes the Infoprint Server PIDU program. The PIDU program is useful for creating and editing many objects at the same time.

```
//AOPBATCH JOB .......
//PIDU EXEC PGM=AOPBATCH,PARM='pidu'
//STDIN DD *
  list printer;
/*
//STDOUT DD SYSOUT=
//STDERR DD SYSOUT=
//STDENV DD *
//STDENV DD *
  PATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/bin:/bin:/usr/bin
  LIBPATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib:/lib:/usr/lib
  NLSPATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/%L/%N:/usr/lpp/nls/msg/%L/%N
/*
```

**Figure 3-2** AOPBATCH program JCL example

Where:

```
EXEC PGM=AOPBATCH,PARM='program_name options'
```

**PARM=** This specifies a program name and options.

- **pidu** - The Printer Inventory Definition Utility program; this utility is provided with Infoprint Server to help you to create printer inventory entries.

  options:

- **-q** - This suppresses informational messages that the **pidu** command writes to the output data set named in the STDOUT DD statement.

- **-v** - This writes the name of the Printer Inventory to the output data set named in the STDERR DD statement, and provides additional informational messages.

**Note:** Infoprint Server must be started before you run the **pidu** command.

**STDENV** This specifies environment variables for use by program **program_name**. You can specify the environment variables in-stream in the JCL, in an HFS file, or in an MVS data set. Specify the environment variables in the format **variable = value**, with only one environment variable on each line or record.
If you omit the STDENV DD statement or do not specify one of the following environment variables, AOPBATCH sets the following default values, which are suitable for running Infoprint Server programs if your installation installed Infoprint Server files in the default directories:

PATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/bin:/bin:/usr/bin
LIBPATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib:/lib:/usr/lib
NLSPATH=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/%L/%N:/usr/lib/nls/msg/%L/%N

AOPBATCH also sets the HOME environment variable to the user’s home directory and sets the LOGIN variable to the user ID.

**STDERR**  This specifies a SYSOUT data set, an HFS file, or an MVS data set.

**STDIN**  This specifies input to the program. You can specify input in-stream in the JCL, in an HFS file, or in an MVS data set.

**STDOUT**  This specifies a SYSOUT data set, an HFS file, or an MVS data set.

**Note:** AOPBATCH is installed in SYS1.LINKLIB; therefore, you do not need to include a STEPLIB DD statement in your JCL.

### 3.3 FSS definitions for IP Printway basic mode

You can create FSS definitions for IP Printway basic mode. All attributes are optional and they do not apply to IP Printway extended mode. However, if you decide to define a FSS definition, then the name of this definition should match the name of the JES FSS definition for the IP PrintWay basic mode startup procedure; see Figure 3-3.

```plaintext
create printway-fss PWFSS
  concatenation-separators =
  default-document-codepage =
  maximum-hiperspace-blocks =
  national-language =
  old-style-translation =
  tcpip-job-name =
  trace-table-size =
  trace-prompt =
  trace-mode =
  applid =
  description = "Defines a IP Printway basic mode FSS object"
;
```

*Figure 3-3  Syntax to create a printway-fss object*

A printway-fss definition is optional, except when you need attribute values which differ from the defaults. For example, the FSS shown in Figure 3-3 is used for a VTAM printer.

### 3.4 FSS definition for a PSF functional subsystem

PSF for z/OS users can define printer initialization parameters, trace parameters, and optional functions in the Printer Inventory instead of in the PSF startup procedure and
installation EXIT 7. All attributes are optional. You would otherwise include these parameters in the PARM field of the EXEC statement of the PSF startup procedure. The name of the psf-fss must equal the name of the JES FSS definition.

```
create psf-fss PSFFSS
    nst-trace-dsname =
    unicode-enabled =
    tcpip-job-name =
    trace-table-size =
    trace-prompt =
    description = "Defines a PSF functional subsystem object"

```

Figure 3-4  Syntax to create a psf-fss object

### 3.5 FSA definitions for PSF and IP Printway basic mode

IP PrintWay does not require any attributes in an FSA definition. However, when you create an FSA definition for IP Printway basic mode, only three attributes are valid. This object is rarely needed for IP Printway basic mode.

```
create fsa PRT1
    fsa-type =
    trace-mode =
    description = "Defines a IP PrintWay FSA object"

```

Figure 3-5  Syntax to create an fsa object for IP Printway

Using the Printer Inventory avoids the need to restart all PSF printers in the startup procedure when you change parameters. Only the printer for which parameters are changed needs to be restarted. This object is optional, however, if defined for PSF, you can use Infoprint Central to display the properties of a PSF printer, or to determine the status of a PSF printer. Infoprint Central can also be used for normal PSF printer operation. You can change job-selection criteria for PSF printers. You can also start, stop, space, interrupt, pause (JES2), and ping a PSF printer.

**Note:** You must create FSS and FSA definitions for PSF if you configure PSF to use the Printer Inventory.

The psf-fsa object is very extensive because it represents an attribute for every PSF PRINTDEV Statement, as well as for many of the functions which could otherwise only be enabled by using EXIT7. Change the PSF printer startup procedure to specify INV=name as the first parameter in the PARM field of the EXEC statement, as shown here:

```
// DD1      EXEC PGM=APSPPIEP,PARM=('INV=name')
```

You must specify the name of the Printer Inventory in the inventory attribute (which by default is AOP1) in the Infoprint Server configuration file (aopd.conf). The INV=name parameter indicates that PSF uses the Printer Inventory and obtains parameters from the specified Printer Inventory for each printer in the startup procedure. No other parameters in the PARM field are used when PSF uses the Printer Inventory.
When defined, PSF takes all fsa object attributes from the printer inventory. However, it can also take them from the PSF startup procedure if they were not defined by the fsa object in the printer inventory yet. Figure 3-6 on page 39 displays the syntax to create an fsa object.

```
create fsa PRT2
  acknowledgement-level =
  applid =
  blank-compression =
  capture-inline-resources =
  channel-buffer-count =
  chars =
  close-libraries-when-idle =
  color-map =
  com-setup-member =
  consolidate-iml-image =
  cse-check-fit =
  cse-orientation =
  cse-preserve-page-position =
  cse-sheet-eject =
  default-process-mode =
  disconnect-action =
  dump-code =
  dump-message-id =
  eject-to-front-facing =
  end-sna-conversation =
  error-disposition-supported =
  failure-action =
  form-definition =
  fsa-trace-dsname =
  fsa-type =
  global-overlay =
  inhibit-recovery =
  input-tray-substitution =
  interrupt-message-page =
  interrupt-message-page-copies =
  issue-intervention-message =
  issue-setup-message =
  label-data-pages =
  label-separator-pages =
  location =
  logmode =
  luname =
  map-to-outline-font =
  mark-interrupt-message-page =
  message-count-before-dump =
  no-response-action =
  no-response-notify =
  offset-interrupt-message-page =
  offset-stacking =
  operator-security-profile =
  override-3800-default-font =
  page-definition =
  port-number =
  print-error-messages =
  print-error-messages-maximum =
```
Chapter 3. Printer definitions

print-error-reporting =
printer-acquire-interval =
printer-connect-interval =
printer-disconnect-interval =
printer-ip-address =
printer-management-mode =
printer-release-interval =
printer-release-mode =
prune-double-byte-fonts =
prune-single-byte-fonts =
psf-send-default-character =
recover-from-font-not-found =
release-ds-when-repositioning =
resolution =
response-timeout =
restrict-printable-area =
retained-fonts =
retained-form-definitions =
retained-object-container =
retained-page-definition =
retained-page-segments =
save-printer-information =
send-messages-to-sysout =
set-3800-dataset-header-origin =
set-3800-dataset-origin =
set-3800-job-header-origin =
set-3800-job-trailer-origin =
set-3800-messages-origin =
smtp-reporting =
suppress-copy-marks =
trace-table-size =
trace-mode =
description = “Defines a PSF FSA object”
;

Figure 3-6 Syntax to create an fsa object

If defined, PSF requires at least a form-definition attribute and a page-definition attribute. Also, depending on the fsa-type attribute, you must also specify printer-ip-address, or luname and applid. However, your PSF installation might need more predefined attributes in order to function properly.

Note: The fsa object name must equal the JES printer name.

3.6 Attributes for the allocation object class

The allocation object represents output-descriptors, which are used for new data sets. These attributes are equivalent to parameters of the OUTPUT JCL statement. Use these attributes to specify processing options for InfoPrint Server print data sets. That is, these attributes become part of the data set output characteristics for the processing of the data set when it finally resides on the JES spool. No attributes are required. However, if you plan to use Print Interface or NetSpool, you must specify the attributes that correspond to a job-selection-rule.
or to the JES work-selection criteria defined for the program (IP PrintWay, PSF, JES, and so on) that you want to process the output data sets from the JES spool.

Note that some print-submission methods allow users to specify the same attributes that you can specify in an allocation object, and not all attributes in this allocation object can be applied to all printers in the printer inventory. Figure 3-7 on page 41 displays the syntax to create an allocation object.

```sql
create allocation default
  address-text =
  afp-parameters =
  building-text =
  burster-trimmer-stacker =
  chars =
  checkpoint-pages =
  checkpoint-seconds =
  color-map =
  com-setup-member =
  copies =
  copy-group =
  department-text =
  destination =
  duplex =
  error-disposition =
  flash-count =
  flash-name =
  form-definition =
  forms =
  forms-control-buffer =
  group-identifier =
  hold =
  input-tray-number =
  jes-form-length =
  jes-maximum-line-count =
  jes-node =
  jes-priority =
  jes-threshold =
  jes-writer =
  label-data-pages =
  name-text =
  normal-output-disposition =
  notify =
  output-bin-number =
  output-class =
  overlay-back =
  overlay-front =
  page-definition =
  print-error-messages =
  print-error-messages-maximum =
  print-error-reporting =
  process-mode =
  resolution =
  resource-directories =
  resource-library =
  restrict-printable-area =
```
room-text =
save-afp-statistics =
segment-pages =
table-reference-characters =
title-text =
universal-character-set =
userdata =
x-image-shift-back =
x-image-shift-front =
y-image-shift-back =
y-image-shift-front =
description = "Defines a default allocation object"
;

Figure 3-7  Syntax to create an allocation object

When you specify dcf-routing = yes, IP PrintWay uses destination, output-class, and forms, if specified, for printer selection. This is important in terms of users submitting via JCL to Infoprint Server. (Note that dcf-routing is an abbreviation of DestinationClassForms-routing.)

Note: The combination of destination, output-class, and forms must be unique in all printer definitions, which means that no other printer can have the same exact combination of these three attributes.

3.7 Attributes for the processing object class

Attributes specified in the processing object are used by Print Interface, IP PrintWay, and NetSpool to process print data and to validate for you that each print job can print on this printer. Figure 3-8 on page 42 displays the syntax to create a processing object.

Attributes in this object can be divided into two subcategories: validation attributes, and processing attributes, as explained here:

- Validation attributes
  
  Some attributes are taken by InfoPrint Server to validate each print job and the print data stream, and to make sure the print stream can print on the printer selected by the user. If the validation fails for a print job, then Infoprint Server rejects the print request.

  Validation options may help you to better utilize printers. For example, they can help to prevent the selection of a printer that is unsuitable for a print job.

- Processing attributes
  
  Some attributes are taken by InfoPrint Server to process each print job and its print data stream. These are attributes which control data stream transformation, data stream encryption, and page formatting.

  Having the wrong processing attributes is often the cause for faulty printouts that nobody wants to see; for example, the document-codepage attribute could not represent the code page which was used as the document was created. Even each program specified in the filter attribute could break a printout down.
create processing default
db-translate-table =
document-codepage =
document-format-supported =
duplexes-supported =
filters =
forms-supported =
input-tray-map =
maximum-copies =
maximum-document-size =
output-bin-map =
pcl-line-density =
pcl-orientation =
pcl-print-density =
pdf-encryption-level =
pdf-owner-identifier =
pdf-protect =
pdf-user-identifier =
print-error-reporting-supported =
print-page-header =
printer-codepage =
printway-bottom-margin =
printway-page-height =
printway-pagination =
printway-sosi-mode =
printway-top-margin =
resubmit-for-filtering =
scs-automatic-page-orientation =
scs-bottom-margin =
scs-horizontal-tabs =
scs-left-margin =
scs-maximum-line-length =
scs-maximum-page-length =
scs-right-margin =
scs-top-margin =
scs-vertical-tabs =
translation-dataset-qualifier =
description = "Defines a processing object"

Figure 3-8  Syntax to create a processing object

No attributes are required. However, you might need to specify the printer-codepage and document-codepage attributes in order for some data formats to print correctly.

3.8 Attributes for the netspool-eof-rules object

Due to the complexity of the other attributes that are valid for the netspool-eof-rules object class, IBM recommends that you use the Infoprint Server ISPF panels to specify end-of-file rules. All attributes are optional. Figure 3-9 on page 43 displays the NetSpool eof-rules default.
3.9 Attributes for the NetSpool-options object

All attributes are optional. The NetSpool-options object, if defined, might help you to fulfill special requirements of an installation; Figure 3-10 shows the default.

```
cREATE NETSPPOOL-OPTIONS DEFAULT
  DEFAULT-OWNER =
  EMBEDDED-ATTRIBUTES PREFIX =
  MAXIMUM-RECORD SIZE =
  NETSPPOOL-FORMATTING =
  RECFM =
  DESCRIPTION = “Defines a netspool-options object”
;
```

Figure 3-10 NetSpool options default

3.10 Attributes for the printway-options object

The printway-options object attributes define how IP PrintWay is to process data prior to transmission to a remote system, how long to wait for a response from the remote system, and how long to retain data sets on the JES spool after successful or unsuccessful transmission. These attributes apply to all of the transmission protocols that IP Printway supports. Figure 3-11 on page 44 displays the syntax to create a printway-options object.

Use caution when you specify a retention period. IP PrintWay basic mode needs a few bytes of storage for each printout. An S878 or $F02 abend code might be seen after IP Printway has used up all storage. If you need a large retention period, run IP Printway extended mode.
3.11 Attributes for the protocol object

The required and optional attributes depend on the value you select for the `protocol-type` attribute. IP PrintWay supports five types of protocols to print data to IP Printway defined printers in the printer inventory, as listed in Table 3-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protocol-type attribute</th>
<th>Required attributes</th>
<th>Optional attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpr</td>
<td>printer-ip-addresses</td>
<td>lpr-xxxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>print-queue-name</td>
<td>owner, server-user-options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipp</td>
<td>printer-uri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vtam</td>
<td>printer-luname</td>
<td>printer-logmode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vtam-checkpoint-pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vtam-send-as-transparent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-mail</td>
<td>mail-to-addresses</td>
<td>mail-bcc-addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mail-cc-addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mail-from-addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mail-replay-address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3-11  Syntax to create a printway-options object
Chapter 3. Printer definitions

The operator-security-profile attribute and the description attribute are optional for all supported protocol types. You can specify attributes either in the printer definition or in an included protocol component. That is, when you create a protocol object, no attributes are required. However, when you create a printer definition, then you must also create protocol-type attributes. Figure 3-12 displays the protocol object default.

```
create protocol default
    lpr-banner-class =
    lpr-banner-job-name =
    lpr-filename =
    lpr-indent =
    lpr-mode =
    lpr-optimize-copies =
    lpr-print-banner =
    lpr-print-function =
    lpr-restrict-ports =
    lpr-title =
    lpr-width =
    mail-bcc-addresses =
    mail-cc-addresses =
    mail-from-name =
    mail-reply-address =
    mail-to-addresses =
    operator-security-profile =
    owner =
    page-accounting =
    page-restart =
    port-number =
    print-queue-name =
    printer-ip-address =
    printer-logmode =
    printer-luname =
    printer-uri =
    protocol-type =
    server-user-options =
    vtam-checkpoint-pages =
    vtam-send-as-transparent =
    description = “Defines a protocol object”
    
Figure 3-12  Protocol object default
```

### 3.12 Attributes for the printer object

When you define printers in the Printer Inventory for users, you must create at least one printer definition to represent each needed protocol type. However, to satisfy some printing requirements, you may need to set up different configurations of printer definitions for the
same printer. Another common approach is to use different sets of Job Control Language (JCL) to submit print requests because submitted JCL can override almost every attribute.

Most of the attributes that you can specify in a printer object are divided into logical groups. Each group represents a printer inventory object which can be included; see Figure 3-13. The six groups of objects are:

- Allocation
- Processing
- NetSpool end-of-file rules
- NetSpool options
- IP Printway options
- Protocol

create printer prt
  dcf-routing =
  general-spooling-mode =
  location =
  lu-classes =
  luname =
  printer-type =
  include-allocation =
  include-netspool-eof-rules =
  include-netspool-options =
  include-printway-options =
  include-processing =
  include-protocol =
  description = “Defines a printer object”
;

Figure 3-13  Create a printer

In addition to these attributes, you can also specify attributes that are valid for other objects. However, some objects and their attributes are valid only for certain printer types, as defined by the printer-type attribute.

### 3.13 Attributes for a printer-pool object

NetSpool requires an lu-class, luname, and printer-names attribute; see Figure 3-14. All other attributes are optional.

create printer-pool broadcast
  printer-names =
  lu-classes =
  luname =
  default-owner =
  embedded-attributes-prefix =
  include-netspool-eof-rules =
  description = “Defines a printer pool for NetSpool”
;

Figure 3-14  Create printer-pool
3.14 Attributes for a job-selection-rule

IP PrintWay extended mode uses the job selection rules defined in the Printer Inventory to determine which print jobs to select from the JES spool for printing. You must create at least one job selection rule in order for IP PrintWay extended mode to select print jobs.

All job selection rules are managed by aopwsmd in its own address space. Figure 3-15 displays the syntax to create a job selection rule.

```
cREATE JOB-SELECTION-RULE NewRule
   JOB-SELECTION-STATUS = 
   OUTPUT-CLASS-LIST = 
   CREATOR-USERID = 
   DEST-IP-ADDRESS = 
   DESTINATION-PATTERN = 
   FORMS-LIST = 
   JES-WRITER-PATTERN = 
   OPERATOR-SECURITY-PROFILE = 
   DESCRIPTION = "Deefines a job selection rule" ; ' 
;
```

*Figure 3-15  Syntax to create a job selection rule*

Be aware that job selection rules only apply to IP Printway extended mode.

*Note: All attributes are optional. If you do not specify any attribute, then IP PrintWay selects all output data sets.*

You do not have to create a job selection rule which contains all sub-parameters. In most cases a simple job section rule that only selects data from a single JES class can be used; see Figure 3-16.

```
cREATE JOB-SELECTION-RULE NewRule
   OUTPUT-CLASS-LIST = P
   DESCRIPTION = "Select print jobs in Class P" ; ' 
;
```

*Figure 3-16  Create a job selection rule*

Each rule is a thread managed by the work selection manager, and it can be enabled or disabled. AOPWSMD_MAXTHREADTASKS limits the number of active job-selections rules. The attributes of the print job must match all values in a rule to be selected.

3.15 The default printer definition

In this section we explain how to define a simple printer. If you only specify the printer IP address on an OUTPUT JCL statement without any printer definition, IP Printway can use values specified in its default printer definition. The name of the IP PrintWay default printer is DFLTNTRY.
3.15.1 Batch job submission

To transmit output from a batch job to an IP Printway printer, use the DEST=IP: OUTPUT JCL statement. Figure 3-17 shows how to verify that IP Printway has enabled a job selection rule.

```
KGOE @ SC74:/u/kgoe>pidu -c 'list job-selection-rule;'  
# list job-selection-rule 
NewRule
KGOE @ SC74:/u/kgoe>pidu -c 'display job-selection-rule NewRule;'  
# display job-selection-rule NewRule  
  output-class-list = {  
    F  
  }  
  description = "Select print jobs in class F"  
KGOE @ SC74:/u/kgoe>
```  

Figure 3-17  Verify the job selection rule

You need to know the IP PrintWay output selection criteria. As shown in Figure 3-17, only JES output class F will be selected by IP PrintWay extended mode. After Infoprint Server is running, a user can submit JCL to print on any attached printer; there are no definitions necessary. However, the user must know the IP address and the queue name of the line printer daemon (LPD) which can run on a server like Windows or on a real printer.

```
//KGOE#00  JOB   (ITSO),'KLAUS GOETZE',TIME=100,NOTIFY=&SYSUID  
  /// print to DFLTNTRY  
  ///  
  //PW  OUTPUT NOTIFY=&SYSUID,  
  //      DEST='IP:9.12.4.87',  
  //      PRTQUEUE='raw'  
  //PRINT EXEC PGM=IEBGENER  
  //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
  //SYSIN   DD DUMMY  
  //SYSUT2  DD SYSOUT=(P,TESTWTR),OUTPUT=(*.PW)  
  //SYSUT1  DD *  
  Hello  
```

Figure 3-18  Using the default printer definition DFLTNTRY to print

§ 1 - When something is wrong, write an e-mail to Infoprint@help.com

Regards, Infoprint Server

/"
To submit a print data set to an IP PrintWay printer for which your system administrator has not created a printer definition, specify a value for the DEST=IP: parameter on the OUTPUT JCL statement, as shown in Figure 3-18 on page 48. This value is the IP address or host name of the printer or the system to which the printer is attached. When you specify DEST=IP: you must also specify a value for either the PRTQUEUE parameter or the PORTNO parameter.

However, you may determine that some characters are being not printed correctly. This is because IP PrintWay had to use a default document-codepage attribute (IBM-1047) and a default printer-codepage attribute (IBM-850). Remember, no printer definition has been made yet. So at this point, you will have to start making definitions.

![Figure 3-19 Using the pidu utility to create a default printer](image)

As you can see in Figure 3-19, the job was encoded in IBM-273 and the LPD decoded in ISO8859-1. Therefore, you need to modify those code pages in order to print without errors.

### 3.16 Objects and attributes

Not all attributes in a printer definition need to be specified, because Infoprint Server and JES supply default values for many of the attributes. Some attributes are used by all printer types of Infoprint Server; other attributes are used only by certain printer types.

These attributes can be divided into three groups:

- Attributes that are only taken from the printer inventory
- Attributes that can be overwritten by a OUTPUT JCL statement
- Attributes that can be transferred to another print server

Attributes are combined into components, and components are combined into printer definitions, although you can always overwrite every attribute on a higher level. That is, when you include components in a printer definition, you can override attributes specified in the components by specifying a different value in the printer definition itself. Notice, however, that if you override an attribute in a printer definition, the printer definition does not pick up the new attribute even though it was changed in the component.
Creating objects called components is optional. You might want to create additional objects in the Printer Inventory and include them in printer definitions; see Figure 3-20. When you create an object, you do not need to specify every attribute in that component. Consider creating components when several printer definitions share the same attributes.

![Sample printer definition](image)

**Figure 3-20  Sample printer definition**

### 3.16.1 A printer object in the Printer Inventory

Each printer object in the Printer Inventory is a collection of objects and attributes. All objects must be defined before they can be added to a printer object. Figure 3-20 shows an example. To create this printer object you must first create every object that should be included. Every existing object can be included; however, you must override each attribute that does not fit your requirements. So, sometimes it may be better to create a new object instead of using an existing one.

#### Allocation object

You can specify attributes in the allocation object of a printer definition to tell Infoprint Server how to allocate output data sets on the JES spool. For example, you can specify the JES output class, forms name, and JES writer name. Some of the attributes apply only if the printer is of a certain type.

As an alternative to specifying attributes in the allocation object, job submitters can specify Infoprint Server job attributes and application programmers can embed job attributes in the VTAM application data sent to NetSpool. There is no definitive rule about what should be specified in here. A sample job as shown in Figure 3-21 on page 51 specifies three attributes.
Processing object

You can specify attributes in the processing object of a printer definition to tell Infoprint Server how to treat output data sets. For example, to control data stream transformation you can specify the document-codepage, printer-codepage, and print-page-header attributes. Job submitters can specify Infoprint Server job attributes to override attributes here. The rule is that you specify at least those attributes which you cannot override dynamically.

```
//KGOE#01 JOB (ITSO),'KLAUS GOETZE',TIME=100,NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//CREATE EXEC PGM=AOPBATCH,PARM='pidu'
//STDOUT DD SYSOUT=* 
//STDERR DD SYSOUT=* 
//* STDENV may point to your environment variables 
//STDIN DD *
create allocation alloc01
   output-class = P
   jes-writer = TESTWTR 
   forms = STD
;
/*
```

Printway-options object

You can define how Infoprint Server is to process data prior to transmission to a remote system, how long to wait for a response from the remote system, and how long to retain data.

You may want to add printer-specific data that IP PrintWay includes at the beginning of the document and sends to the remote printer or print server. For example, there is an attribute where you might specify printer commands to change the printer default font.

IP PrintWay does not include any data at the beginning of a document, so make sure that all commands specified here are accepted by the printer. If you specify a document-header attribute and translate-document-header=yes, then IP Printway translates your data from document-codepage to printer-codepage. So use care regarding which code page is taken, if you do not enter the values in hexadecimal format.
Protocol object
You can specify attributes in the protocol object of a printer definition to tell Infoprint Server what kind of protocol Infoprint Server should use; see Figure 3-24. If you are going to use protocols other than LPR (for example, VTAM, PSF, EMAIL, and so on), then you must define these protocols here. The required and optional attributes depend on the value you select for the protocol-type attribute. Depending on the protocol, Infoprint Server also decides which objects can be included. For example, a PSF printer does not have a printway-options object included.

Figure 3-24  Sample job to create a protocol object

The printer object
You can specify all attributes in the printer object. However, in order for Infoprint Server to display the correct ISPF panels for a printer definition, you must specify the printer-type attribute. Also, you can include predefined objects. However, some objects are valid only for certain printer types, as defined by the printer-type attribute.

Figure 3-25 on page 53 shows a job that creates a complete printer definition. All four objects (alloc01, process01, opt01, prot01) are included into this printer; in this example we decided to override a few attributes.
After a printer object has been defined, you can modify it in the ISPF panel. An asterisk (*) in the Custom values field means that one or more attributes in the object called component have been overwritten by attributes in the printer object. To add, delete, or modify attributes, you can use the ISPF panel interface or the pidu utility.

Tip: To view the values that are active, place your cursor on the Custom values field and press Enter.
3.17 AOPPRINT procedure usage examples

Print Interface provides the AOPPRINT JCL procedure in SYS1.PROCLIB so that local users can submit the `lp` command from a batch job. You can use the printer template (created in Figure 3-25 on page 53 and displayed in Figure 3-26 on page 53) to print to any printer. However, keep in mind that attributes were set, and the printer must support all attributes set in the printer object (for example, printer-codepage=ISO8859-1).

However, you can override some of these attributes. In Figure 3-27, for example, we changed the real printer (that is, the IP address and queue name). The `title-text` attribute can be used, at the receiver side, to identify the printout. This procedure is useful when you transfer print jobs on another server where you cannot change the attributes easily.

```
//KGOE#06 JOB (ITSO), 'KLAUS GOETZE', TIME=100, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//PRINT EXEC AOPPRINT, PRINTER='template',
//     OPTIONS='attributes=//DD:ATTR'
//SYSIN DD *
Hello

here am I. This is your Infoprint Server who has printed that for you.

§ 1 - When something is wrong write an e-mail to Infoprint@ibm.com

Regards, Infoprint Server
/*
//ATTR DD *
printer-ip-address = 9.12.4.87
print-queue-name = raw
title-text = 'Test Print'
/*
```

Figure 3-27 Sample AOPPRINT

OUTCLASS=class
This specifies the 1-character alphanumeric name of the sysout class for informational messages. The name of the data set where informational messages are written is specified by the STDOUT DDname.

ERRCLASS=class
This specifies the 1-character alphanumeric name of the system output data set (sysout) class for error messages. The name of the data set where error messages are written is specified by the STDERR data definition name (DDname).

PRINTER=printer_definition_name
This specifies the name of a printer definition created by your administrator. The printer definition identifies a printer or an e-mail destination, and sets default values for transform options and for some job attributes. The name of the printer definition is case sensitive. Enter it exactly as your administrator indicates.
OPTIONS='attribute=value ...'
This specifies job attributes and values to use in processing the job. Enter the attribute names in lower case, and separate attributes by using a space. To specify more than 120 characters of job attributes, then specify a UNIX file or an MVS data set instead. Use the attribute called attributes to specify the file or DD name from which attributes are to be read.

3.17.1 Remote print server

Select the IP PrintWay LPR protocol if you want IP PrintWay to transmit data sets to the printer or print server using the TCP/IP LPR protocol defined by RFC 1179. When IP PrintWay uses this protocol, an LPD that adheres to RFC 1179 must be running in the remote printer or print server.

RFC 1179 describes a print server protocol that is widely used on the Internet for communicating between line printer daemons (both clients and servers). However, many printer (or print server box) manufacturers totally ignore the details of the RFC1179 protocol and simply accept the data files for printing, disregarding the control file until they need to print a banner or provide status information. For example, even if you specify copies, the LPD may ignore them.

```
//KGOE#07 JOB (ITSO), 'KLAUS GOETZE', TIME=100, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//PR      EXEC AOPPRINT, PRINTER='template',
//             OPTIONS='attributes=//DD:ATTR'
//SYSIN    DD *

Hello

here am I. This is your Infoprint Server who has printed that for you.

§ 1 - When something is wrong write an e-mail to Infoprint@ibm.com

Regards, Infoprint Server
/*
//ATTR     DD *
printer-ip-address = 9.12.4.48
print-queue-name = AFP2PCL
copies = 2
title-text = 'Test Print'
*/
```

Figure 3-28 Sample AOPPRINT to print to a print server

You can use the `lpq` command to query the names, locations, and descriptions of printers, and to query the status of a print request; see Figure 3-29 on page 56. Many operating systems provide a `lpq` command but the response differs, depending on the LPD being asked.
3.17.2 Remote PSF print server

IP PrintWay can transmit files to Infoprint Manager for AIX® or Infoprint Manager for Windows on the remote system. It creates -o parameters in the control file. The -o parameters contain AFP values specified by the job submitter, such as a page-definition attribute.

You can use the Infoprint Server subsystem to submit batch jobs to the local Infoprint Server, because the Print Interface aoplpd program accepts Infoprint Server job attributes; see Figure 3-30. This procedure might be useful when you want to distribute your AFP jobs to a different Infoprint Server that accepts AFP data.

---

```
//KGOE#01 JOB (ITSO), 'KLAUS GOETZE', TIME=100, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//CREATE EXEC PGM=AOPBATCH, PARM='pidu'
//STDOUT DD SYSOUT=*  
//STDERR DD SYSOUT=*  
//STDENV may point to your environment variables
//STDIN DD *  
create printer remote-PSF
  printer-type = ip-printway
  output-class = P
  destination = PSF
  document-formats-supported = {  
    line
    modca
  }
  print-queue-name = PSF
  printer-ip-address = 9.12.4.70
  dcf-routing = yes
  location = "Poughkeepsie Building 008"
  lpr-mode = to-remote-psf
/
```

---

Figure 3-29 Query replies

Figure 3-30 Sample to create printer template
Figure 3-31 displays JCL to submit a job to the created printer.

```
//KGOE#02  JOB (ITSO), 'KLAUS GOETZE', TIME=100, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//PW      OUTPUT NOTIFY=&SYSUID,
//        FSSDATA=('printer=remote-PSF'),
//        PAGEDEF=CO9182,
//        FORMDEF=A10110,
//        CHARS=GTE1,
//        PRTQUEUE=EMAIL01,
//        CLASS=P
//PRINT    EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN    DD DUMMY
//SYSUT2   DD SYSOUT=P, OUTPUT=(*.PW)
//SYSUT1   DD *
Hello

here am I.
This is your Infoprint Server
who has printed that for you.

§ 1 - When something is wrong write
      an e-mail to Infoprint@ibm.com

Regards, Infoprint Server
/*
```

*Figure 3-31  JCL to submit a job to created printer*
Migrating from basic mode to extended mode

Because IP PrintWay basic mode had outgrown its design point, a new and more flexible, scalable, usable, and reliable mode was developed. IP PrintWay extended mode provides additional functions that help you manage printers and print jobs more easily. IP PrintWay extended mode is a UNIX application that uses z/OS UNIX System Services. Each mode can be replaced by the other, however, IBM does not plan additional enhancements to IP PrintWay basic mode. That is, all future enhancements are done only to IP PrintWay extended mode.

This chapter provides an overview of Infoprint Server changes, and it provides information to assist Infoprint Server users in migrating from IP PrintWay basic mode to IP PrintWay extended mode. In summary:

- Customize IP Printway extended mode
- Review exits and printer definitions
- Review accounting by SMF type 6 records
- Set up common message log
- Configure Infoprint Central and HTTP Server
- Define job selection rules
- IP PrintWay extended mode interactions and dependencies
- Stop IP PrintWay basic mode and start IP Printway extended mode
4.1 IP PrintWay extended mode

IP PrintWay, starting with z/OS 1.5, uses the Sysout Application Programming Interface (SAPI) to obtain printouts from the JES spool, when it operates the new extended mode. IP PrintWay benefits from a better performance because the Sysout Application Programming Interface (SAPI) supports multiple, concurrent requests from the application.

IP PrintWay basic mode is the name used for the original IP PrintWay mode of operation, to distinguish the original mode from the IP PrintWay extended mode. You can continue to run IP PrintWay basic mode. However, no enhancements will be made to IP PrintWay basic mode. IBM will make enhancements in future releases only to IP PrintWay extended mode.

Operators can use Infoprint Central, instead of Infoprint Server ISPF panels, to access print jobs and printers from the network. All information and definitions about printer and print jobs selected by IP PrintWay extended mode are now kept in the printer inventory. JES definitions are no longer needed.

**Note:** IP PrintWay extended mode cannot share printing information across systems in a sysplex.

4.2 Extended mode versus basic mode

Although IP PrintWay extended mode uses existing printer definitions, some printer attributes are no longer supported. Some attributes apply to either IP PrintWay basic mode or extended mode, but not both. Printer attributes that do not apply are ignored. For example, IP PrintWay extended mode does not use TCP/IP translate tables as IP PrintWay basic mode can.

Table 4-1 lists the IP Printway modes.

**Table 4-1  IP Printway modes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP PrintWay extended mode</th>
<th>IP PrintWay basic mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uses Sysout Application Programming Interface</td>
<td>Uses Functional Subsystem Interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since z/OS 1.5</td>
<td>Original mode of operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runs as a daemon in UNIX System Service</td>
<td>Runs as started task in z/OS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses printer inventory and common message log</td>
<td>Uses VSAM queue file and message data set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job selection defined in Infoprint Server</td>
<td>Work selection defined in JES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managed using Infoprint Central or ISPF panels</td>
<td>Managed using ISPF panels only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writes temporary files to UNIX file system</td>
<td>Writes temporary files to hiperspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter programs (like Transforms) invoked directly</td>
<td>Uses resubmit for filtering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit of 4 GByte file size</td>
<td>Limit of 2 GByte file size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support of IPv6 and IPv4</td>
<td>Support of IPv4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can retain a unlimited number of print jobs</td>
<td>Limited by the region size below the line</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.1 Extended mode enhanced function and other advantages

IP PrintWay extended mode offers the following enhanced function, which gives you advantages over the use of basic mode:

- Can print data sets up to 4 GByte if space is available in the file system.
  - Temporary print files are stored in a subdirectory under /var/Printsrv/printway/.
  - Temporary print job status information is stored under /var/Printsrv.
- Writes a printer address for all protocol types in the SMF type 6 record.
- Can print on printers that have IPv6 addresses.
  - You must use the host name (instead of the colon-hexadecimal address) in the DEST=IP: JCL parameter.
- Can process more print jobs without running out of address space. Print jobs do not have to be kept allocated.
  - $F02 or S878 abend codes are less likely.
- Can retain an unlimited number of print jobs.
- Does not require that you customize JES.
- New management functions for operators using Infoprint Central
  - Find and display printers or print jobs.
  - Redirect print job to another IP PrintWay printer.
  - Start and stop printers.
  - View the message log.
  - View properties.
- Automatically detect data format and verify that a job will print on a selected printer.
- Sends additional Infoprint Server messages to the z/OS system hardcopy log.
- IP PrintWay extended mode allows you to track the number of pages printed on printers that support HP PJL protocol.

4.3 Tasks required to migrate

The following customization is required to migrate to extended mode:

- Modifications to the aopd.conf configuration file
- Customize the aopmsg.conf configuration file
- Printer Inventory directories and files
- Consider the space requirements for temporary files
- Environment variables for IP PrintWay extended mode
- IP PrintWay job selection rules
- Infoprint central customization

4.3.1 Edit the Infoprint Server configuration file aopd.conf

You must add or edit the Infoprint Server configuration file, aopd.conf.
The following attributes in aopd.conf apply to IP PrintWay extended mode.

**start-daemon = { outd }
**
Add the outd value to any existing value in this attribute to start the IP PrintWay extended mode daemons (aopoutd and aopwsmd). By default, the Printer Inventory Manager daemons and the LPD start. The AOPOUTD address space is shown in Figure 4-1 on page 63.

The AOPWSMD address space is the work selection client that manages and starts the work selection elements for getting jobs from the JES spool through the SAPI interface. The address space uses the IP PrintWay job selection rules in the Printer Inventory to select output data sets from the JES spool.

**smf-recording = yes | no**
This attribute indicates whether IP PrintWay extended mode writes SMF type 6 records for data sets that it sends to a printer or e-mail destination. The default is yes.

**resolve-printway-printers = yes | no**
This attribute indicates whether IP PrintWay extended mode looks up the full hostnames of printers in the Domain Name Server (DNS). Because different threads can be printing at the same time, there is an increased possibility of connection refused errors if two or more printer definitions are being used at the same time. Resolving all printer IP addresses both ways, by IP and by name, allows PrintWay to serialize the jobs going to the same target device. The default is yes.

**log-retention = days**
This refers to the number of days of messages to keep in the common message log and information about output data sets that are no longer on the JES spool to keep in the Historical Inventory. A value of zero (0) means that nothing is kept. The default is 1 day.

**max-historical-inventory-size = megabytes**
The maximum size (in megabyte) of the Historical Inventory. The default is 10 MByte.

**Note:** If you change one of these attributes while Infoprint Server is running, then stop and restart the IP PrintWay extended mode daemons.
4.3.2 Infoprint Server message configuration file aopmsg.conf

The Infoprint Server message configuration file, aopmsg.conf, lets you customize message processing. This configuration file is optional. If the file does not exist, or if an attribute in the file is omitted, Infoprint Server uses default values. If you did not create the configuration file in the default location, you need to set the AOPMSG_CONF environment variable.

AOPMSG_CONF - The full path name of the Infoprint Server message configuration file.

In the aopmsg.conf configuration file, you specify the following attributes that customize Infoprint Server message processing.

hardcopy-messages = all | list | none
This specifies which additional messages Infoprint Server sends to the hardcopy log. If you specify hardcopy-messages=LIST, also specify hardcopy-messages-list.

all This sends all eligible messages to the hardcopy log.
list This sends only the additional messages that are listed in the hardcopy-message-list attribute to the hardcopy log.
none This sends no additional messages to the hardcopy log. Only console messages are sent to the hardcopy log. This is the default.

Attention: If you change this attribute while any Infoprint Server daemons are running, restart all daemons.
hardcopy-message-list = {messageID messageID ...}
These are the message IDs of the messages that Infoprint Server sends to the hardcopy log when the hardcopy-messages=list attribute is specified. Specify the entire message ID, including the severity code (E, I, S, T, or W). You can use either upper case or lower case characters. Enclose the list of messages in braces, and separate message IDs with spaces.

Example: hardcopy-message-list={AOP3614I AOP3803E}

4.4 Printer Inventory directories and files

The Printer Inventory Manager uses two hierarchical file system directories:

- The /etc/Printsrv directory, which is the default location for Infoprint Server configuration files

  The /etc/Printsrv directory contains all Infoprint Server configuration files. This directory is created automatically with the appropriate permissions when you install Infoprint Server.

- The /var/Printsrv directory

Infoprint Server directories

- /etc/Printsrv - Infoprint Server configuration files
- /var/Printsrv - Infoprint Server files, including the Printer Inventory
  Both created automatically when you install Infoprint Server

Figure 4-2 Mountpoint for the printer inventory

Sysplex environment

If your system is part of a sysplex, the /var/Printsrv file system must be system-specific and designated NOAUTOMOVE in the BPXPRMxx PARMLIB member. If you specify a different base directory in the base directory attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file, the file system that contains this directory must be system-specific and designated NOAUTOMOVE.
Chapter 4. Migrating from basic mode to extended mode

4.4.1 /var/Printsrv directory

The /var/Printsrv directory specified by the `base-directory` attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (`aopd.conf`) is the default location for other Infoprint Server files, including the Printer Inventory files.

Printer Inventory Manager creates the Printer Inventory files automatically the first time Infoprint Server is started. The Printer Inventory files contain objects that the administrator created, as shown in Figure 4-3 on page 66. However, there are also objects that the administrator does not create. For example, Print Interface creates objects for each job processed. These job objects are deleted when the data sets to which they correspond are deleted from the JES spool.

/var/Printsrv files

The directory specified by the `base-directory` attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (`aopd.conf`) and its subdirectories contain these types of files that are shown in Figure 4-3 on page 66.

The /var/Printsrv directory also contains temporary files that the Print Interface LPD creates as it receives data from clients that send the control file after sending data files. As previously mentioned, by default, most clients send the control file after sending data files. The Infoprint Port Monitor always sends the control file first. Commands such as `ls` do not display these files because the LPD unlinks them after it opens them. When the LPD closes the files, they are deleted.

Recommendation: Do not change the owner or permissions of the /etc/Printsrv directory. For a secure environment, this directory should be:

- Owned by the UID of 0.
- Writable only by users with an effective UID of 0.

You can create Infoprint Server configuration files in a directory other than the /etc/Printsrv directory. If you do so, specify the location of the configuration files in Infoprint Server environment variables.
4.4.2 Calculate the space needed for temporary files

The amount of space required depends on a variety of factors, such as the number of printers you have, the size of data sets you process, and the number of days of messages and historical information you want to keep.

/var/Printsrv space requirements

In some cases, IP PrintWay has to read the entire file before it can begin processing. These temporary files are stored in a subdirectory specified by the base-directory attribute. The default is /var/Printsrv/, and temporary print files are stored under /var/Printsrv/printway/. This significantly increases the space requirement for the /var/ directory.

Recommendation: Mount a separate file system at this mount point.

Temporary file creation

Files are created in the following situations:

- Temporary files that the Print Interface LPD creates as it receives data from LPR clients that send the control file after sending data files. By default, most clients send the control file after sending data files. The Infoprint Port Monitor, however, always sends the control file first. Commands such as ls do not display these files because the LPD unlinks them after it opens them. When the LPD closes the files, they are deleted.
- Language Environment® dumps (CEEDUMPs)
- /var/Printsrv/printway - this directory contains temporary files that IP PrintWay extended mode writes before transmitting data to printers. IP PrintWay extended mode always
writes temporary files when it uses the LPR transmission protocol. It also writes temporary files when it uses the IPP or direct-socket transmission, but only if more than one copy is requested.

Note that IP PrintWay basic mode never writes temporary files in this directory. Instead, IP PrintWay basic mode writes temporary files in hiperpace.

- IPP or direct-sockets protocol and printer definition specifies either:
  - Copies
  - Maximum document size

The amount of space needed for temporary print files depends on:

- Maximum size of a document
- Maximum number of documents in a job
- Number of concurrently active printers

For example:

\[
\text{max. document size (4GB) } \times 2 \text{ documents per jobs } \times 5 \text{ active printers } = 40 \text{ GB}
\]

It is unlikely that 5 printers would print such large documents all at the same time—but you should at least consider the possibility of that occurrence.

**Recommendation:** Restrict very large jobs to one or two target printers.

### 4.4.3 Space allocation for /var/Printsrv file system

The amount of space required for the file system at the /var/Printsrv mount point depends on a variety of factors such as the number of printers you have, the size of data sets you process, and the number of days of messages and historical information you want to keep. Use the information in this section to estimate how much space you need to allocate for the file system. Also, other factors can influence how much space is required.

**Guideline:** Allocate at least 750 MB of DASD space for the file system mounted at the /var/Printsrv mount point. If you do not run IP PrintWay extended mode or use data stream transforms, you might need less space. If you print extremely large files, or if you want to keep many days of messages and historical information, you might need more space.

The default maximum size of the Historical Inventory is 10 MByte. To change the maximum size, specify the following items:

- The max-historical-inventory-size attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file, (aopd.conf). For the search (searchdb) database, allow five times more space than the maximum for the Historical Inventory.
- Also, allow an additional 12 K for each printer that IP PrintWay or PSF controls. The number of days specified in the log-retention attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (aopd.conf) determines the size of the message log database.
- For every 1000 data sets processed, allow 2 MB in the logs directory and 6 MB in the logdb directory.
Allocate a file system for /var/Printsrv directory

Allocate a 1 GByte zFS data set for a file system to be mounted at the /var/Printsrv mount point (unless you decide that one of the space requirements as described applies to your environment, so that you need a larger size or smaller size).

For an existing Infoprint Server system that is currently defined, follow these steps.

1. Copy the existing /var/Printsrv directory structure from a shell session using the `tar` command to copy the files into an archive file in /tmp:
   ```
   cd /var/Printsrv
   tar -cvf /tmp/printsrv.tar *
   ```
2. Create a file system to mount at /var/Printsrv, as shown in Figure 4-4. For example, a 1GByte zFS aggregate contains about 1500 cylinders:
   ```
   zfsadm create -a OMVS.VAR.PRINTSRV -cylinders 1500 0 -volumes xxxxxx
   zfsadm format -a OMVS.VAR.PRINTSRV -compat
   ```

   **Note:** One cylinder in a zFS aggregate contains 90 8K blocks.

3. Delete all the files that are currently in /var/Printsrv.
4. Mount the new file system just created at /var/Printsrv, as shown in Figure 4-4.
5. Copy the previous offloaded files to the newly created file system:
   ```
   cd /var/Printsrv
   tar -xvf /tmp/printsrv.tar
   ```

**Tip:** The Printer Inventory, Historical Inventory, search database, and message log database are optimized for rapid direct access to objects. As you add objects to the databases, files in the databases increase in size. When you remove objects, the files do not decrease in size because the Printer Inventory Manager designates as available the space that had been occupied by the removed objects. When you add objects in the future, the Printer Inventory Manager uses available space in the files. The files increase in size only when they do not contain sufficient available storage. So, the size of files can be characterized as a high-water mark.

**Note:** One cylinder in a zFS aggregate contains 90 8K blocks.
Check the status of /var/Printsrv

To learn how to check the status of /var/Printsrv directory space usage, refer to Appendix C.1, “Infoprint Server health check” on page 174, where you will find a sample health check routine that you can use to monitor this situation.

4.4.4 Specify environment variables for IP PrintWay extended mode

You must specify environment variables for IP PrintWay extended mode if any of these conditions apply:

- You have written IP PrintWay exits and the library that contains the exits is not in the system LNKLST
- You use FCBs in your installation and the SYS1.IMAGELIB library is not in the system LNKLST
- You send output to e-mail destinations and the z/OS UNIX sendmail command was not installed in the default directory
- You want to customize the IP PrintWay e-mail function
- You have more than one TCP/IP stack in your installation
- You print on a VTAM-controlled printer
- You installed Infoprint Server libraries in a different location
- You want to suppress errors due to missing printer definitions
- You print line data that contains unprintable characters

Note: For security reasons, Infoprint Server daemons use some variables only if they are set in the aopstart EXEC. Infoprint Server does not use variables set in /etc/profile.

4.4.5 Define IP PrintWay job-selection rules

You do not need to add JES functional subsystems for IP PrintWay extended mode. Also, there are no JES definitions needed. All you need is a job selection rule, because job selection rules are comparable to the JES work selection criteria you specified in IP PrintWay basic mode.

IP PrintWay extended mode uses the job selection rules defined in the Printer Inventory to determine which print jobs to select from the JES spool for printing. You must create at least one job selection rule in order for IP PrintWay to select print jobs. The attributes of the print job must match all of the values in a rule to be selected.

All job selection rules are managed by the AOPWSMD address space. Each rule is a thread managed by the work selection manager, and can be enabled or disabled. AOPWSMD_MAXTHREADTASKS limits the number of active job-selection rules.
You define job selection rules in the printer inventory. You do not need to define all attributes of a selection rule. However, if you want to run IP PrintWay extended mode and IP PrintWay basic mode at the same time, make sure that IP PrintWay extended mode does not select the same print jobs as IP PrintWay basic mode does.

4.4.6 Customize Infoprint Central

Because all information about Infoprint Server is maintained in a UNIX file system, there is a great dependency on Infoprint Central to manage IP PrintWay extended mode. Use Infoprint Central for easier access to databases maintained by Infoprint Server. Also, operators can use Infoprint Central instead of Infoprint Server ISPF panels to work with printers and print jobs.

You must use Infoprint Central to perform these tasks:

- Redirect print jobs on a printer's queue
- Start and stop IP PrintWay printers
- Start and stop job selection rules
- Display messages related to a particular printer or print job
- Delete or hold print jobs that IP PrintWay extended mode is currently processing

4.5 Migration issues and concerns

Both IP PrintWay extended mode and IP PrintWay basic mode can be used with current versions of Infoprint Server.

If you plan to run IP PrintWay extended mode on more than one system in a sysplex, you must set different work selection criteria. IP PrintWay extended mode cannot share printing information across multiple systems in a sysplex as IP PrintWay basic mode can.

IP PrintWay extended mode always uses the z/OS iconv utility to convert between EBCDIC and ASCII code pages. It does not use standard or customized TCP/IP translate tables as IP PrintWay basic mode can.

IP PrintWay extended mode does not call the message exit and the response notification exit. Also, IP PrintWay extended mode does not pass some fields in the ANFUEXTP control block to IP PrintWay exits, and it ignores requests from the exits to hold or delete data sets.

IP PrintWay extended mode writes different fields in the SMF type 6 record than IP PrintWay basic mode.
Though IP PrintWay extended mode can use printer definitions which are also used by IP PrintWay basic mode, some attributes apply to either IP PrintWay basic mode or extended mode, but not both. Printer attributes that do not apply are ignored. If you use one of those attributes then the result may differ, depending on the mode of IP PrintWay.

### 4.5.1 Attributes to review

This section describes the changes you might need to make in printer definitions that specify these fields when you migrate to extended mode.

**document-formats-supported**
Select the data formats that IP PrintWay should accept. This field also applies to IP PrintWay basic mode, but only when the **resubmit-for-filtering** option is selected.

**duplexes-supported**
Select the duplex option that IP PrintWay should allow. This field also applies to IP PrintWay basic mode, but only when the **resubmit-for-filtering** option is selected.

**printway-formatting**
IP PrintWay extended mode ignores this formatting option.

**db-translate-table, translation-dataset-qualifier, printway-sosi-mode**
IP PrintWay extended mode does not use single-byte or double-byte TCP/IP translate tables specified in these fields to translate data. PrintWay extended mode uses only the iconv utility to translate data between code pages.

**line-termination**
IP PrintWay extended mode ignores this field for the LPR, direct-sockets, IPP, or e-mail protocol. However, IP PrintWay extended mode lets you specify the line termination controls for the VTAM protocol.

**printway-postscript**
IP PrintWay extended mode ignores this field and does not add any Postscript headers.

**resubmit-for-filtering**
IP PrintWay extended mode ignores this field because it transforms data streams by calling the transforms directly, without resubmitting the data sets to Print Interface.

**automatic-dataset-grouping**
This field does not apply to IP PrintWay basic mode, and if selected, overrides the option selected in the data set grouping field. Select this field for more efficient printing if your printer supports it.

**operator-security-profile**
This field does not apply to IP PrintWay basic mode. It specifies the name of the RACF profile for the printer if you use Infoprint Central.

**page-accounting**
This attribute is new for Infoprint Server in z/OS V1R8, and does not apply to IP PrintWay basic mode. Select this field for more accurate accounting information. If selected, IP
PrintWay extended mode records the number of printed pages in the SMF type 6 record. The printer must support PJL and the direct sockets printing protocol.

**page-restart**
This attribute is new in Infoprint Server z/OS V1R8, and does not apply to IP PrintWay basic mode. If this field is selected, IP PrintWay extended mode tells the printer to restart printing after the last page that the printer reported printed successfully. The printer must support PJL and the direct sockets printing protocol.

### 4.6 The SMF type 6 record

If you want IP PrintWay extended mode to write System Management Facilities (SMF) type 6 records, you must authorize the user ID that starts Infoprint Server daemons to write SMF records. To do this, give the user ID that starts Infoprint Server daemons READ access to the BPX.SMF profile in the FACILITY class. This user ID should be a member of the AOPOPER group.

If Infoprint Server is not permitted to BPX.SMF, you might see a repetitive message stating AOP3608E IP PrintWay could not write an SMF record. If you do not want IP PrintWay extended mode to write SMF type 6 records, specify the attribute smf-recording = no in the Infoprint Server configuration file.

To authorize IP PrintWay to write SMF type 6 records, follow these steps:

1. Define the BPX.SMF profile in the FACILITY class.
   ```
   RDEFINE FACILITY (BPX.SMF) UACC(NONE)
   ```
2. Give the AOPOPER group READ access to the BPX.SMF profile.
   ```
   PERMIT BPX.SMF CLASS(FACILITY) ID(AOPOPER) ACCESS(READ)
   SETROPTS RACLIST(FACILITY) REFRESH
   ```

If you permit READ access to BPX.SMF while Infoprint Server is running, stop and restart the IP PrintWay extended mode daemons.

IP PrintWay extended mode writes information in new fields in the SMF type 6 record. Therefore, you must recompile your SMF exit when you migrate to IP PrintWay extended mode. A new mapping macro, AOPSMF6, has been created; it maps segments written by IP PrintWay and PSF. This new macro is invoked by IFASMFR internally. Differences in content occur in the File Transfer section.

#### SMF6INDC
This field indicates IP Printway extended mode when set to 7. It indicates IP Printway basic mode when set to 1.

#### SMF6BYTD
This indicates total bytes transmitted to printer that supports files greater than 2 GByte.

#### SMF6FTL
This is the level indicator for the file transfer section. 1 = IP Printway extended mode.

#### SMF6URI
This indicates what protocol was used.
SMF6URIL
This indicates the length of the SNF6URI field.

SMF6IP1, SMF6IP2, SMF6IP3, and SMF6IP4
This contains binary zeros for IP Printway extended mode.

SMF6OUT
This field contains the name of the IP PrintWay basic mode FSA. If you run IP PrintWay extended mode, which does not have an FSA, this field contains zeroes.

Note: For information about the SMF type 6 record that IP PrintWay extended mode writes, see z/OS MVS System Management Facilities (SMF), SA22-7630.

4.7 User exits

All exits run in problem state with a protection key of 8 if invoked by IP Printway extended mode. You do not need to change your exits. They can be used by IP PrintWay extended mode, as well as by IP PrintWay basic mode.

Also, exits do not have to be recompiled, except the ANFUXSMF exit. However, when you install a new release, exit parameter areas or other macros may have changed; therefore, it is always recommended that you recompile all exits with the newest set of macros.

In IP PrintWay extended mode, the routing exit cannot share XTPWORK1 and XTPWORK2 values with other exits.

4.7.1 Exits used by IP PrintWay

The following exits are used by IP PrintWay.

Begin Data set exit
No changes. The administrator specifies the name of the Begin Data Set exit in the printer definition. Therefore, you can write different Begin Data Set exits for different printers; for example, the exit can add records to create a separator page.

Record exit
No changes. The administrator specifies the name of the Record exit in the printer definition. Therefore, you can write different Record exits for different printers; for example, add one or more records, replace a record, or delete a record.

End Data Set exit
No changes. The administrator specifies the name of the End Data Set exit in the printer definition. Therefore, you can write different End Data Set exits for different printers; for example, the exit can add records to create a trailer page.

SMF exit ANFUXSMF
IP PrintWay calls the same SMF exit for all data sets, and you must recompile your exit. If you do not write an SMF exit, IP PrintWay writes a standard SMF type 6 record for each data set sent to the printer. IP PrintWay extended mode writes different fields in the SMF type 6 record than IP PrintWay basic mode.
Flag XTPDSJNW indicates whether this is a JESNEWS data set. This flag applies only to IP PrintWay basic mode.

**Message exit ANFUXMSG**
The message exit applies only to IP PrintWay basic mode.

**Response Notification exit ANFUXRSP**
The Response Notification exit applies only to IP PrintWay basic mode.

**Routing exit ANFUSRTG**
This Routing exit lets you reroute a data set (IP PrintWay basic mode) or output group (IP PrintWay extended mode) to another printer or e-mail destination. IP PrintWay calls the same Routing exit for all data sets.

### 4.7.2 The exit parameter area - ANFUEXTP

When you run IP PrintWay extended mode, the same ANFUEXTP control block is shared by all exits except for the Routing exit. IP PrintWay extended mode does not pass some fields in the ANFUEXTP control block to IP PrintWay exits, and it ignores requests from the exits to hold or delete data sets.

### 4.7.3 The job separator page data area - IAZJSPA

IP PrintWay extended mode uses the Subsystem Application Programming Interface (SAPI) to obtain a SYSOUT data set from JES. SAPI does not provide a way for IP PrintWay extended mode to obtain the job separator page data area (JSPA) control block for the SYSOUT data set. Therefore, IP PrintWay extended mode constructs a partial JSPA from the information provided by SAPI and includes a pointer to this formulated JSPA control block in the ANFUEXTP control block that it passes to user exits.

IP PrintWay extended mode cannot obtain or construct a JMR control block. Therefore, it sets the JSPAJMR field to 0. The partial JSPA that IP PrintWay extended mode creates contains information that is available to it, as listed in Table 4-2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fields which contain valid values</th>
<th>Fields which do not contain valid values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JSPAJBNM</td>
<td>JSPADEVN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPAJBID</td>
<td>JSPADEVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJGRPN</td>
<td>JSPAJMR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJGRPD</td>
<td>JSPJGRP1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJRMNO</td>
<td>JSPJGRP2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJPNAM</td>
<td>JSPAUSR1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJDSNM</td>
<td>JSPAUSR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJSOCL</td>
<td>JSPCELEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPJPRI0</td>
<td>JSPCEVSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSPCEUID</td>
<td>JSPCESEC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4-2  Job separator page area fields
4.8 IP Printway and VTAM-controlled printers

IP PrintWay requires Infoprint coaxial printer support for z/OS, 5655-N62 to print on VTAM-controlled printers in an SNA network. This additional feature of Infoprint Server lets you transform line data to Data Stream Compatibility/Data Stream Extended (DSC/DSE) or SNA character string (SCS); see Figure 4-6.

When IP PrintWay prints on VTAM-controlled printers, it runs as a VTAM application program. Therefore, to print on VTAM-controlled printers, you must create a VTAM APPL statement in the SYS1.VTAMLST data set. Figure 4-7 on page 75 shows VTAM printer definition.

If IP PrintWay runs on more than one system in a sysplex, create unique APPL IDs for each system in the sysplex. If you run IP PrintWay basic mode, create an APPL statement with a unique APPL ID for each IP PrintWay FSS defined to JES.

Note: When you run IP PrintWay basic mode and IP PrintWay extended mode at the same time, you cannot use the same APPL statement.

If you run IP PrintWay extended mode, you must specify the APPL ID in the AOP_APPLID environment variable in the aopstart EXEC. This REXX exec is used to establish a secure environment on which to start the Infoprint Server daemons. You must edit the aopstart EXEC.

```
create printer vtam-printer
    description = "prints to a VTAM-controlled printer"
    location = "Somewhere in the SNA network"
    printer-type = ip-printway
    protocol-type = vtam
    printer-luname = SC74PR01
    printer-codepage = IBM-037
    dcf-routing = yes
    forms = STD
    destination = VTAM
    output-class = P

Figure 4-7  VTAM printer definition
```
Infoprint Central

This chapter describes how to customize Infoprint Central. Infoprint Central is a component of Infoprint Server. It is a Web-based print management user interface that allows help desk operators, print administrators and users to view print jobs, queues and printers. Depending upon their security authorization, they can:

- Hold, move, cancel and release jobs
- Turn printers online and offline
- Pinpoint network connectivity problems
- Track Infoprint Central actions by user ID
- Perform many other functions for job and printer management

There is a great dependency on Infoprint Central to manage IP PrintWay extended mode, so you should customize Infoprint Central if you run IP PrintWay extended mode.

Infoprint Central helps you respond faster to questions about where print jobs have printed and why printers are not working. Using Infoprint Central, you can determine the status of print jobs, cancel print jobs, and move print jobs. It also allows you to determine the status of printers, to restart printers, and to redirect printers to alternate printers.

The printer operator can start and stop printers, change the forms loaded in printers, and redirect all print jobs to a different printer. Infoprint Central lets you determine where and when your print job printed, to see if a printer is busy, and to find the name of a printer in your building.
5.1 Infoprint Central and the HTTP server

As mentioned, Infoprint Central is Infoprint Server’s Web-based tool for managing jobs and printers throughout the enterprise from anywhere with access to the Internet and a Web browser. Intended primarily for help desk operators, it lets users query the status of jobs and printers, see job or printer messages, stop and start printers, move jobs from one printer queue to another, cancel or hold jobs, and many other functions. Infoprint Central uses integrated z/OS security services so that users can be authorized to perform only certain tasks, or to perform tasks only on designated devices. Figure 5-1 illustrates Infoprint Central access to Infoprint Server.

Infoprint Central customization

This chapter explains how to customize Infoprint Central, and it provides you with a guideline for performing the tasks required. Apart from a Web browser, no other applications are needed on remote workstations, so all you need to do is start an HTTP server. The HTTP server must run on the same system as Infoprint Server.

Figure 5-1 Infoprint Central access to Infoprint Server

5.1.1 Software requirements

The operating system must be at z/OS Version 1 Release 5 or higher. Additional IBM software beyond the z/OS base elements is required, as described here.

- Depending on the maintenance level of Infoprint Server, you need a different level of IBM XML Toolkit for z/OS, C++ edition. For example, after you apply the fix for APAR OA17015, Infoprint Central will no longer function with the XML Toolkit V1.6 level that Infoprint Central previously required.
  - XML Toolkit V1.8 is contained in either the IBM XML Toolkit for z/OS V1.8 package or in the IBM XML Toolkit for z/OS V1.9 package.
  - Each release of the XML Toolkit package includes the two prior versions. So XML Toolkit 1.8 includes 1.7 and 1.6.

- You also need SDK for z/OS, the Java™ 2 Technology Edition pointed to by the JAVA_HOME environment variable. Infoprint Central can use either Java 1.4 or Java 5.0.
Any of these Web browsers can be used:
- Microsoft® Internet Explorer® 5.5 (or a higher level)
- Netscape Navigator 7.0 (or a higher level)
- IBM Home Page Reader 4.0 (or a higher level)
- Mozilla Firefox 2.0 (or a higher level)

**Note:** When you apply maintenance to Infoprint Server, also restart the HTTP server hosting Infoprint Central to apply the changes here, as well.

### 5.1.2 The z/OS HTTP Server

You must start the z/OS HTTP Server to display Infoprint Server Web pages. The HTTP Server must run on the same system as Infoprint Server. This could mean that you have to start an HTTP Server on each z/OS system where Infoprint Server is running. You can start multiple instances of the HTTP server, but each instance must listen on a separate port or IP address.

![Infoprint Central and Infoprint Server](image)

**Figure 5-2** Infoprint Central and Infoprint Server

### 5.2 Customizing the z/OS HTTP Server

You must customize and start the z/OS HTTP Server to display Infoprint Central Web pages. The following customization options are available.

- Start a separate HTTP Server to be used exclusively by Infoprint Central. As mentioned, this can improve Infoprint Central performance. Also, this lets you customize the HTTP Server for Infoprint Central without affecting other applications that use the HTTP Server.
Start an HTTP Server on each z/OS system where Infoprint Server is running. This is because the HTTP Server can display Infoprint Central Web pages only for the Infoprint Server running on the same z/OS system as the HTTP Server.

- Customize the HTTP Server to use the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol if you want to encrypt information that passes between the user's browser and the HTTP Server.

**Important:** Refer to *z/OS HTTP Server Planning, Installing, and Using, SC34-4826*, for more information about customizing an HTTP Server for use with Infoprint Central.

### 5.2.1 HTTP procedure

Copy the IMWEBSRV sample member provided in SYS1.SAMPLIB to a site procedure library, for example, SYS1.PROCLIB(IMWPROC). Then make changes as needed to the member IMWPROC, which is shown in the example and in Figure 5-3 on page 82.

#### Assign user ID

The server needs to be assigned a user ID that you select. You can define your Web server to execute with a zero (0) or non-zero z/OS UNIX user ID.

```
RDEFINE STARTED IMWPROC.** STDATA(USER(AOPSTC))
SETROPTS RACLIST(STARTED) REFRESH
```

**Note:** If you are changing the IMWPROC.** profile as an update, use RALTER statements instead of RDEFINE statements.

#### Authorize user ID

The Web server uses the following z/OS UNIX resource profiles to provide the user ID you select with the proper authority.

- **BPX.DAEMON**
  
  The Web server normally uses this facility for daemon programs that need to validate user passwords and then change the MVS identity and z/OS UNIX UID and GID of a spawned address space.

- **BPX.SERVER**
  
  The Web server normally uses this facility for its programs that use POSIX threads and that need to associate a surrogate MVS identity with each thread in their address space.

- **BPX.SMF**
  
  The Web server normally uses this facility to validate read access to the user ID for writing SMF records.

#### RACF commands for authorization

You can issue the following commands to authorize the user ID:

```
PERMIT BPX.DAEMON CLASS(FACILITY) ID(AOPSTC) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT BPX.SMF CLASS(FACILITY) ID(AOPSTC) ACCESS(READ)
PERMIT BPX.SERVER CLASS(FACILITY) ID(AOPSTC) ACCESS(UPDATE)
SETROPTS RACLIST(FACILITY) REFRESH
```

#### Configure installed files by running setup.sh

Run the supplied z/OS UNIX System Services shell script (setup.sh) to change the ownership of the installed files to your Web administration user ID, set up permissions, create default configuration files, and configure languages. Or you can copy from:

```
/usr/lpp/internet/samples/config/C
```
Copy the configuration file to customize it. In the example startup procedure shown in Figure 5-3 on page 82, it was copied to /etc/Printsrv/httpd.conf.

**Note:** To run setup.sh, you must be a superuser or the SMP/E installer. This means you must have read and execute permission for setup.sh. The permission file for setup.sh should be 700. If someone other than the owner or superuser runs setup.sh, it may not execute correctly.

To execute setup.sh, you must be in the z/OS UNIX shell and utilities (by typing in OMVS at TSO ready). You cannot execute setup.sh in ISHELL. If you do not use the default Web administration user ID and group (WEBADM and IMWEB), then you must change these defaults coded in setup.sh to the specific names you used.

**TCP/IP profile data set**

In your TCP/IP profile, reserve the port that the server uses to access z/OS UNIX. The port directive in the HTTP configuration file specifies the port number being used. The default is TCP 80 for a base server, and TCP 443 for a secure server.

**IMWPROC JCL**

Changes to the sample IMWPROC JCL, shown in Figure 5-3 on page 82, are as follows:

- **ENVAR**
  
  The ENVAR option sets initial values for specified environment variables that the server is started with. Using ENVAR, you can pass switches or tagged information using standard z/OS UNIX functions.

  You may set additional environment variables using the _CEE_ENVFILE ENVAR option. The default _CEE_ENVFILE shipped with the server is /etc/httpd.envvars, which is compiled into the IMWHTTPD program. You can use the _CEE_ENVFILE ENVAR option to override this default.

  The environment variables are shipped with the server under /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/samples/config.

- **/etc/Printsrv/httpd.envvars**
  
  _CEE_ENVFILE=/etc/Printsrv/httpd.envvars is used in Figure 5-3 on page 82 for Infoprint Central HTTP server.

- **-r configuration-file**
  
  This specifies the file to use as the configuration file. You must use this flag if you want to start the server with a configuration file other than the default /etc/httpd.conf file.

- **-r /etc/Printsrv/httpd.conf**
  
  This is used for the Infoprint Central HTTP server.

- **-nosec**
  
  This flag forces a base server. Security loads are bypassed.

- **-p port-number**
  
  This option means listen on this port number. The default port number is 80. This flag overrides the Port directive specified in the configuration file. Port 8080 will be used for Infoprint Central HTTP server.
5.2.2 z/OS HTTP Server environment variables file (httpd.envvars)

You must add or edit these environment variables in the z/OS HTTP Server environment variable file, httpd.envvars. If an environment variable already exists in the HTTP environment variables file, add the new values to the existing values, separating values with a colon (:).

The z/OS HTTP Server environment variable file, httpd.envvars, contains environment variables that affect Infoprint Central. The default location is /etc/httpd.envvars. The following list discusses the variables you might need to set in this file. Figure 5-4 on page 84 displays sample environmental variables.

You must always set the required variables (ICU_DATA, LIBPATH, and NLSPATH). You must set the optional variables only if the default values are not suitable for your installation.

**AOPCENTRAL**  This is the directory that contains Infoprint Central files. This environment variable is optional. If you installed Infoprint Server files in the default directory, you do not need to set this environment variable.

Default: AOPCENTRAL=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral

**AOPCONF**  This is the full path name of the Infoprint Server configuration file. This environment variable is optional. If you created the configuration file in the default location, you do not need to set this environment variable. The values in the z/OS HTTP Server environment variables file and in the aopstart EXEC must match.

Default: AOPCONF=/etc/Printsrv/aopd.conf

**AOPLIMIT**  This is the maximum number of objects that Infoprint Central displays after a search. This limit prevents the HTTP Server from timing out before Infoprint Central can display all objects that meet the users' search criteria. This environment variable is optional. You can specify a number from 1 to 9999. If you specify an incorrect value, the default value is used. Consider the following recommendations:
If Infoprint Central users ask to see more than 250 objects, try increasing the limit. If the higher limit causes the HTTP Server to time out, try increasing the HTTP Server's timeout value.

If the HTTP Server times out occasionally with the default limit, ask users to narrow their searches.

If the HTTP Server times out repeatedly with the default limit, lower the limit or try increasing the HTTP Server’s timeout value.

Default: AOPLIMIT=250

**LIBPATH**

Add these values to the existing values. Separate values with semicolons.

The first two values refer to IBM XML Toolkit libraries:

- `/usr/lpp/ixm/IBM/xslt4c-1_9/lib`
- `/usr/lpp/ixm/IBM/xml4c-5_5/lib`
- `/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib`

**NLSPATH**

Add this value to the existing values: `/usr/lpp/Printsrv/%L/%N`

**AOPCENTRAL_CODEPAGE**

This environment variable is intended for customers who encode their inventory data using a code page other than IBM-1047. Specify the same code page for AOPCENTRAL_CODEPAGE that you specify in the LC_ALL or LC_CTYPE environment variable in the STDENV data set for the AOPSTART JCL procedure. The specification in the Language field on the Infoprint Server ISPF Configuration panel should also use this code page.

**AOP_READ_COMMUNITY**

This is the SNMP community name that allows read access to TCP/IP-attached printers. The SNMP read community name is required for Infoprint Central to display information from the printer (such as status, paper level, and model) and to display the turn online, turn offline, and reset printer actions. This environment variable is optional.

**AOP_WRITE_COMMUNITY**

This is the SNMP community name that allows write access to TCP/IP-attached printers. The SNMP write community name is required to turn printers online, offline, and reset them. This environment variable is optional.

**ICU_DATA**

This value refers to IBM XML Toolkit libraries.

For example: `/usr/lpp/ixm/IBM/xml4c-5_5/lib`

**LANG**

This is the language used for messages. Infoprint Server provides messages in English and Japanese. Specify En_US for English messages, or Ja_JP for Japanese messages.

Default: C (equivalent to En_US)

**LC_ALL**

This is the locale used to format time and date information in messages and the language of messages. Specify the same LC_ALL value in the environments for the Printer Inventory Manager and Infoprint Central. This locale overrides the locale in the LC_TIME variable.

Default: C (also called POSIX)

**LC_CTYPE**

This is the locale that determines the EBCDIC code page used to validate Infoprint Server attribute values. Specify the same LC_CTYPE value in the environments for the Printer Inventory Manager and Infoprint Central. Also, specify a comparable value in the Language field on the Infoprint Server ISPF Configuration panel.

LC_ALL does not override LC_CTYPE.
LC_TIME

The locale used to format time and date information in messages. Specify the same LC_TIME value in the environments for the Printer Inventory Manager and Infoprint Central.

Default: C (also called POSIX)

TZ

The time zone used to format date and time information in messages displayed by Infoprint Central. Specify the same TZ value in the environments for the Printer Inventory Manager and Infoprint Central.

Default: The z/OS HTTP Server default is EST5EDT (Eastern U.S. time zone). The default for the Printer Inventory Manager is GMT0.

# You must put variables on one line in the httpd.envvars file.
#
# You cannot pass LE runtime options in httpd.envvars file. This file
# is read during httpd start up, and by that time, the LE runtime is
# already established for that process.
#
PATH=/bin:.:/usr/sbin:/usr/lpp/internet/bin:/usr/lpp/internet/sbin:/usr/lpp/ldap/bin
NLSPATH=/usr/lib/nls/msg/%L/%N:/usr/lpp/internet/%L/%N:/usr/lpp/ldap/lib/nls/msg/%L/%N:/usr/lpp/Printsrv/%L/%N
LIBPATH=/usr/lpp/internet/bin:/usr/lpp/internet/sbin:/usr/lpp/ldap/lib:/usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib:/usr/lpp/ixm/IBM/xml4c-5_5/lib:/usr/lpp/ixm/IBM/xslt4c-1_9/lib
#
SHELL=/bin/sh
TZ=EST5EDT
LANG=C
LC_ALL=en_US.IBM-1047
STEPLIB=CURRENT
GSKV3CACHESIZE=1024
GSKV2CACHESIZE=512
_BPX_SHAREAS=NO
HTTP_CONNECTION_PERCENTAGES=12,25,30,10,20
HTTP_CONNECTION_SIZES=192,584,1544,7168,33728
HTTP_MEMPOOL=32320
HTTPD_TMPDIR=/usr/lpp/internet/server_root/logs
#
# * Infoprint Server Environment values needed
# ************************************************************
ICU_DATA=/usr/lpp/ixm/IBM/xml4c-5_5/lib
JAVA_HOME=/usr/lpp/java/J1.4
#
# InfoPrint Central Trace
# AOPTRACEON=1
# AOPTRACEDIR=/tmp
#
AOPCENTRAL=/usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral
AOPCONF=/etc/Printsrv/aopd.conf
AOPLIMIT=25

Figure 5-4 Sample environment variables
5.2.3 Infoprint Server configuration file

To use Infoprint Central, you must edit the Infoprint Server configuration file, aopd.conf. Add or edit the following attributes in the aopd.conf configuration file:

- \textbf{start-daemons = \{ ssid \}} - These are the daemons which start when you run the \texttt{aopstart} command or AOPSTART JCL procedure. To use Infoprint Central, you must start the \texttt{aopssid} daemon. Add the ssid value to any existing values in this attribute.

  If you change this attribute while Infoprint Server is running, stop and restart all Infoprint Server daemons to pick up the change.

- \textbf{console-name = name} - This is the name of the extended MCS console that Infoprint Central uses to send commands to the z/OS system.
  - The console name must be 2 - 8 alphanumeric or national (#, $, and @) characters in length. The first character cannot be numeric.
  - Do not use these reserved names: HC, INSTREAM, INTERNAL, OPERLOG, SYSIOSRS, SYSLOG, UNKNOWN, SYSJ3D0x, and SYSJ3R0x.
  - If you change this attribute while the z/OS HTTP Server is running, restart the HTTP Server to pick up the change.

Default: The printer inventory name (specified in the inventory attribute), followed by the last 4 characters of the system name. If the printer inventory name is AOP1 and the system name is MVSYS1, the default is AOP1SYS1.

5.2.4 Sample HTTP Server file configuration file

IBM recommends that you start your new Web server with copies of the sample httpd.conf and httpd.envvars files shipped with the product before you manually add changes. After the Web server can be started, you can add variables and you can change variables as outlined. The Web server must be restarted to pick up changes made in http.envvars.

Specify \texttt{_BPX\_SHAREAS=NO} to prevent z/OS UNIX System Services from loading spawned programs into the Web server address space, because when these programs are not marked as program-controlled, the Web server receives error code 02AF.

**Important:** Values in the z/OS HTTP Server environment variables file and in the aopstart EXEC must match.

5.2.5 Customize the HTTP Server configuration file

The Service, ServerInit, Pass, and AddType directives for Infoprint Central are required. Add these directives to the HTTP Server configuration file in the method shown in the examples Appendix B.1, “Sample httpd.conf file” on page 164. After you update this configuration file, restart the HTTP Server so that your changes take effect.
Update the Service Directive section

Add the following directives to the HTTP Server configuration file in the order shown.

- In the Service Directives section of the file, add these directives.

  Add these Pass directives before the ServerInit and Service directives and before the
generic Pass directive, Pass /*.

  Do not add these Pass directives in the section indicated for Pass directives in the
comments of the HTTP Server configuration file.

  Pass  /Infoprint/Scripts/* /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/Scripts/*
  Pass  /Infoprint/Images/*  /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/Images/*
  Pass  /Infoprint/help/En_US/*  /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/help/En_US/*

# =====================================================================
# Printsrv directives
# =====================================================================
ServerInit  /usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib/aopcentral.so:initialize*
Service /Infoprint*  /usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib/aopcentral.so:dllMain*

Note: If any of these directives already exist, delete or comment out the existing
directives so that the directives suitable for Infoprint Central are used. Notice that the
.css directive is present in the default configuration file.

Appendix B, “Sample HTTP Server configuration file” on page 163 contains a sample
configuration file.

Update the AddType directives

- In the section that contains AddType directives, add these directives at the end of the
section.

  If any of these directives already exist, delete or comment out the existing directives so
that the directives suitable for Infoprint Central are used. Notice that the .css directive is
present in the default configuration file.

  AddType .js application/x-javascript  ebcDIC 1.0  # JavaScript
  AddType .htc text/x-component  ebcDIC 1.0  # .htc files
  AddType .css text/css  ebcDIC 1.0  # cascading style sheets

Note: File /usr/lpp/Printsrv/samples/httpd.conf.updates contains the required directives.

Additional directives for consideration

You can add those directives to an already configured HTTP configuration file. If you do not
use an already-configured HTTP configuration file, then also check the following parameters.

AccessLogExpire,ErrorLogExpire,ReportDataExpire
   Use this directive to specify that you want to remove log files when they
reach a certain age (in days)
AccessLog, Agentlog, RefererLog, ErrorLog, CgiErrorLog
If you want logging, use this directive to specify the path and file name where you want the server to log messages.

OutputTimeout
Use this directive to set the maximum time allowed for your server to send output to a client.

SAFExpTime
This directive controls the duration of the validity of SAF group files. Groups defined in SAF are refreshed after this period of time.

DoReporting
If you want your server to automatically generate reports, set the DoReporting directive to on. If enabled, the server will use the default reporting program, unless you specify a replacement program using the LoggingReportingProgram directive.

Update UserID directive
The default UserID directive, UserId %%CLIENT%%, in the HTTP Server configuration file allows only users with a valid z/OS user ID use Web pages. This directive is suitable for Infoprint Central.

As an alternative, you can specifically protect Infoprint Central Web pages by including a Protect directive for the Infoprint Central pages.

User ID %%CLIENT%%

Update Protection directive section
The z/OS HTTP Server lets you use any of several methods to protect Web pages. You can use a protection method that provides Infoprint Central with a unique z/OS user ID and password that has been authenticated by RACF or a similar security system.

Use this directive to define a protection setup within the configuration file. You give the protection setup any name (AOP_USER, for example) and define the type of protection using protection subdirectives.

**Note:** In the configuration file, you must place Protection directives before any DefProt or Protect directives that point to them.

The name you select is associated with this protection setup. The name can then be used by subsequent DefProt and Protect directives, shown in “Update Protect directive” on page 88, to point to this protection setup.

This directive is suitable for Infoprint Central. As an alternative, you can specifically protect Infoprint Central Web pages by including a Protect directive for the Infoprint Central pages.

Protection AOP_USER {
  Serverid InfoPrint_Server_Operation
  UserID %%CLIENT%%
  AuthType Basic
  GroupFile %%SAF%%
  PasswdFile %%SAF%%
  Mask AOPOPER, AOPADMIN, ADMIN, admin
}

If you code %%SAF%% on the GroupFile subdirective, the groups named in the Mask directive must have an OMVS segment. Notice that you should specify the user IDs with both uppercase and lowercase letters so that users can log on using either case.
Use the Mask subdirective to specify valid user names or groups that are then authorized to access Infoprint Central.

**Note:** Specify the Protection template *before* the Pass and ServerInit directives for Infoprint Central. This template allows only z/OS user ID ADMIN and all users of the z/OS group AOPOP and AOPADMIN use Infoprint Central Web pages. You can use groups in a Protection directive only when you define the groups in a group file, in an LDAP server, or in SAF.

The directive SAFExpTime is used to force automatic periodic reloading of SAF groups into storage. That is, users may have access to Infoprint Central until this directive expires, or have to wait until access is granted.

**Update Protect directive**

The server compares an incoming client request to the template on the protect directive. If the server finds a match between the incoming request and the template, the server continues to check subsequent Protect directives for additional matches. The server uses the last matching Protect directive for activating protection, so it is good practice to put your most restrictive Protect directives last.

Use the Protect directive to activate protection setup rules for requests that match a template.

```
Protect /Infoprint* AOP_USER
```

On the Protect directive, you can add an access control user to which the server should change when serving the request. This allows z/OS UNIX file protection to restrict access. This user ID will be used for controlling access to MVS resources, and must include a z/OS UNIX segment containing the UID and GID to be used for controlling access to HFS files.

### 5.3 Using Infoprint Central

After the HTTP server has been started, you should be able to log on to Infoprint Central. To log on to Infoprint Central, enter a URL in the browser:

- For the English version:
  ```
  ```
  If the HTTP Server uses Secure Sockets Layer (SSL):
  ```
  ```

- For the Japanese version:
  ```
  ```
  If the HTTP Server uses Secure Sockets Layer (SSL):
  ```
  ```

Where:

- **hostname** This is the address of the z/OS system where the HTTP Server is running.
- **port** This is the port where the HTTP Server receives requests. If the HTTP Server receives requests at the default port, you can omit the port number.
Chapter 5. Infoprint Central

The default port number depends on whether you have customized the HTTP Server to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL):

- The SSL default port is 443.
- Otherwise, the default port is 80.

**URL examples**

These examples are using the default port number 80 and go to the same z/OS system.


**Using a port that is not the default**

If you specify a port number other than 80, then you must specify the port number in the URL. In Figure 5-3 on page 82, the port number is 8080. For that example, the URL should be:


### 5.3.1 Web browser access to Infoprint Central

The Web browser specifies the name specified on the ServerID so users know which protection scheme they must provide a given user ID and password for. Note, if you omit the ServerID subdirective, the Web server creates a default name of UNKNOWN.

Figure 5-5 on page 90 displays **Serverid InfoPrint_Server_Operation**, as specified in the Web browser access to Infoprint Central.

When you log on to Infoprint Central, you can log on to only one z/OS system. You can see all the print jobs, printer queues, and Infoprint Server messages for that one z/OS system only. Therefore, if you configure IP PrintWay extended mode to print on the same printers from different z/OS systems, you must open separate instances of your Web browser so that you can see all print jobs on a printer's queue and all messages from IP PrintWay about a printer.

From the Web browser, enter a URL as follows:

  
  For example:


**Note:** If the HTTP Server receives requests at the default port, you can omit the port number in the URL. The default port number depends on whether you have customized the HTTP Server to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).

When the panel shown in Figure 5-5 on page 90, enter a TSO/E user ID and password. The user ID that is specified must be in the **Mask** specification in “Update Protection directive section” on page 87. The **Mask** specification contains either user IDs or group IDs and the User name in Figure 5-5 on page 90 must be defined there.
5.3.2 Customizing a Web browser

Customize the browser's Internet settings. However, depending on your Web browser, you might not be able to customize some of these settings. Infoprint Central requires that the browser supports JavaScripts and Style Sheets. Both functions must be enabled. Do not block or disable all cookies. Infoprint Central stores cookies on your system to save your search values. If cookies are enabled, then your search criteria are kept if saved once.

Request that your browser always retrieve the latest pages from the Web so that the Infoprint Central refresh function works correctly. Otherwise, you might not see the latest information when you refresh a page. If you use Microsoft Internet Explorer, change the setting for temporary Internet files to check for newer versions of stored pages to “Every visit to the page.” Do not use the Microsoft default setting, which is to check for newer versions of stored pages automatically. Also, if you use Microsoft Internet Explorer, do not disable the meta refresh security option. Infoprint Central uses the meta refresh function to display your search results automatically.

As shown in Figure 5-6 on page 91, at the Internet Options window, in the Temporary Internet files section click Settings.... At the Settings window, under the Check for newer versions of stored pages: section, check Every visit to the page.

Note: To encrypt and decrypt information that passes between the user's browser and the HTTP Server, you can customize the HTTP Server to use the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.
5.4 Working with Infoprint Central and security

Infoprint Central is a Web-based print management system primarily designed for help desk operators. However, other authorized users or job submitters can also use Infoprint Central.

Print management on z/OS
When you log on to Infoprint Central, you can log on to only one z/OS system. You can see all the print jobs, printer queues, and Infoprint Server messages for that one z/OS system only. To see print jobs, printer queues, and messages for more than one system, you can open separate instances of your Web browser and log on to several z/OS systems at a time. Infoprint Central requires the z/OS HTTP Server and a Web browser. No applications other than a Web browser need to be installed on users' workstations.
Working with printers
You can find and work with printers that are defined in the Printer Inventory, including IBM AFP printers controlled by PSF (called PSF printers), and TCP/IP-attached or SNA-attached printers to which IP PrintWay extended mode sends print jobs (called IP PrintWay printers). If you run IP PrintWay extended mode, use Infoprint Central because it lets you work with IP PrintWay extended mode printers. It also lets you work with output data sets that IP PrintWay extended mode is currently processing and displays the status of output data sets, including whether IP PrintWay has retained them.

Working with print jobs
You can find and work with print jobs that are on the JES spool. Plus, you can see more information about print jobs that Infoprint Server processes. For example, you can see whether an Infoprint Server print job completed successfully and where it printed even if the print job is no longer on the JES spool. You can use several different search criteria to find print jobs. After you find a print job, you can delete, hold, release, move, or change the priority of the print job. And, you can see all messages from Infoprint Server for that one print job.

Help desk operators and authorized users
Infoprint Central allows help desk operators and other authorized users or job submitters to work with print jobs, printers, and NetSpool logical units (LUs); display printer definitions; and check system status.

5.4.1 Defining Infoprint Central users as z/OS UNIX users
You must define users of Infoprint Central to RACF as z/OS UNIX users. Infoprint Central users do not need to be authorized to use TSO. If you give users temporary RACF passwords, be sure to explain to users how to rlogin or telnet to the z/OS system to change the password the first time. The z/OS HTTP Server does not let users change passwords from the logon window.

5.4.2 Authorizing users using Infoprint Central
Some Infoprint Central actions require that users be authorized to read the Printer Inventory. These actions include the following:
- Viewing PSF printers
- Printer definitions
- Printer pool definitions
- IP PrintWay job selection rules

To authorize users to read the Printer Inventory, using either Infoprint Central or Infoprint Server ISPF panels, give the AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile in the PRINTSRV class universal READ access or give all Infoprint Central users READ access.

    RDEFINE PRINTSRV(AOP.ADMINISTRATOR) UACC(NONE)
    PERMIT AOP.ADMINISTRATOR CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(READ) ID(userid or groupid)
    SETROPTS RACLIST(PRINTSRV) REFRESH

Access to printers
You can define profiles in the PRINTSRV class to restrict who can work with printers. Profiles in the PRINTSRV class can apply to both IP PrintWay and PSF printers. You can define a separate profile to protect each printer, or you can define one profile to protect a group of printers or all printers. For example, if you want to authorize different users to work with printers in different locations, define separate profiles for printers in each location. You could
define one profile for all printers in one location, and another profile for all printers in another location. If you want to authorize the same group of users to work with all printers, you need to define only one profile.

5.4.3 Operator security profiles for IP PrintWay and PSF printers

Infoprint Central allows users to work with printers that IP PrintWay controls (called IP PrintWay printers) and with printers that PSF for z/OS controls (called PSF printers). You can protect IP PrintWay and PSF printers with profiles in these classes, as follows:

- Specify a security profile in the PRINTSRV class in the Protocol panel for IP PrintWay printers, as shown in Figure 5-7 on page 94. You can specify a security profile in the PRINTSRV class in the FSA Definition panel for PSF printers, as shown in Figure 5-8 on page 94.
- Give the profile universal READ access if you want all Infoprint Central users to be able to view properties of the printer.
- When defining these profiles, determine whether to define a profile for each printer, or define one profile for a group of printers or all printers.

Note: If you define profiles in both classes, users must have access to both profiles to perform actions on PSF printers. You can select any name for the profile that RACF allows. However, do not start the name with AOP to avoid conflict with profile names that IBM uses now or in the future. Profile names can be up to 64 characters in length.

In the Protocol panel shown in Figure 5-7 on page 94, specify the name of a RACF resource profile in the PRINTSRV class. Only users connected to this profile can display and work with this printer using z/OS Infoprint Central for the Web. This field is not required.

You can define a separate profile to protect each printer, or you can define one profile to protect a group of printers or all printers. To authorize users to a group of printers, specify the same profile name in the IP PrintWay printer definitions and PSF FSA definitions for all printers in the group. If more than one printer definition exists for a printer, specify the same profile name in each printer definition. If you specify a profile name that is not defined to RACF, or if this field is blank, anyone can work with this printer. This field does not apply to IP PrintWay basic mode or e-mail.

Protocol panel for IP PrintWay printers

In Figure 5-7 on page 94, the POK.ROOM1 security profile definition shown is for a group of printers in ROOM1, and POK is just a name for the location. If you want to authorize different users to work with printers in different locations, define separate profiles for printers in each location. If you want to authorize the same group of users to work with all printers, you need to define only one profile.

- One profile to protect a single printer
  ```
  RDEFINE PRINTSRV (POK.PRT1) UACC(NONE)
  PERMIT POK.PRT1 CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(READ) ID(userid or groupid)
  ```
- For printers groups or all printers
  ```
  RDEFINE PRINTSRV (POK.ROOM1) UACC(NONE)
  PERMIT POK.ROOM1 CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(READ) ID(userid or groupid)
  ```
In Figure 5-8, specify the name of a RACF resource profile in the PRINTSRV class. Only users connected to this profile can use Infoprint Central to display and work with this PSF printer. (In Infoprint Central, a “PSF printer” can refer to an AFP printer or to AFP Download Plus.) This field is not required.

To authorize the same users to a group of printers, specify the same profile name in the PSF FSA definitions and the IP PrintWay printer definitions for all the printers in the group. To work with any PSF printer, users must be connected to the JES2 or JES3 profiles in the OPERCMDS class. This is true whether or not you specify a profile in this field.

Note: To specify the same operator security profile in a group of IP PrintWay printer definitions, create a Protocol component with the name of the security profile and specify that Protocol component in all the printer definitions. Creating a component makes it easier to change the name of the profile if necessary.

**FSA Definition panel for PSF printers**

In Figure 5-8, specify the name of a RACF resource profile in the PRINTSRV class. Only users connected to this profile can use Infoprint Central to display and work with this PSF printer. (In Infoprint Central, a “PSF printer” can refer to an AFP printer or to AFP Download Plus.) This field is not required.

To authorize the same users to a group of printers, specify the same profile name in the PSF FSA definitions and the IP PrintWay printer definitions for all the printers in the group. To work with any PSF printer, users must be connected to the JES2 or JES3 profiles in the OPERCMDS class. This is true whether or not you specify a profile in this field.

**5.4.4 PIDU command and operator security profiles**

You can use the `pidu` command to specify the name of the same RACF profile in all IP PrintWay printer definitions that do not already contain a profile name, as explained here.

First, enter the OMVS shell, then type these commands as one command on the z/OS UNIX command line:

```sh
pidu -qc "list printer where printer-type=ip-printway and operator-security-profile=null;" | awk'{print "modify printer "$1 " operator-security-profile = \"POK>ROOM1\";"} > /tmp/defs
```

The `pidu list` command lists the names of all IP PrintWay printer definitions with no value in the operator-security-profile attribute. These names are piped to the awk program, which
writes modify commands to modify the printer definitions to file /tmp/defs. Then, perform these tasks:

1. Inspect the /tmp/defs file to make sure the modify commands are acceptable.
2. Enter this command to update the Printer Inventory:
   ```
   pidu < /tmp/defs
   ```

**awk command**

The `awk` command is a powerful command that can perform many different operations on files. The general purpose of `awk` is to read the contents of one or more files, obtain selected pieces of information from the files, and present the information in a specified format.

   ```
   pidu < /tmp/defs
   ```

### 5.4.5 Security access to printer actions

Table 5-1 lists the printer actions that authorized users can perform using Infoprint Central, as well as the minimum access required to the printer's profile in the PRINTSRV class.

**Note:** You must define users of Infoprint Central to RACF as z/OS UNIX users. Some Infoprint Central actions require that users be authorized to read the Printer Inventory. These actions include viewing PSF printers, printer definitions, printer pool definitions, and IP PrintWay job selection rules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Using Infoprint Central, a user can do the following</th>
<th>Access required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Find and display printers</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ping a printer and run traceroute</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect a job to another IP PrintWay printer</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore IP PrintWay printers</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start and stop printers</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View the log for IP PrintWay printers</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View printer properties</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space, repeat, pause, interrupt PSF printers</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change forms, job selection for PSF printers</td>
<td>UPDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop printer and delete or hold the current print job</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn online, turn offline, and reset printers</td>
<td>CONTROL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** To give users access to perform all printer actions, give CONTROL access to the RACF profile.

### 5.4.6 Creating a search database

Infoprint Server maintains a search database that lets Infoprint Central find objects in the Printer Inventory. You must run the z/OS UNIX `sdbu -z` command to create this search database. To use the `sdbu` command, you must be connected to the RACF AOPADMIN
group or have an effective UID of zero (0). The Infoprint Server search database daemon (aopsdbd) must also be started. This daemon starts automatically when you run the `aopstart` command or the AOPSTART JCL procedure.

**Create the search database**

To create the search database, follow these steps:

- If you are not connected to the required RACF groups, switch to an effective UID of zero (0). To use the `su` command, you must be permitted to the BPX.SUPERUSER profile in the FACILITY class in RACF.
- Start Infoprint Server daemons if they are not already started.
- Create the search database.

```plaintext
sdbu -z
```

The search database files in the `/var/Printsrv/searchdb` directory are created.

If the search database daemon (aopsdbd) fails, you must run the `sdbu` command again to recreate the search database.

**5.4.7 Customizing PSF for z/OS to use Infoprint Central**

If you want to use Infoprint Central to work with IBM AFP printers that PSF for z/OS controls (called PSF printers), you must customize PSF for z/OS to use the Printer Inventory.

To customize PSF for z/OS to use the Printer Inventory:

- Create a PSF FSS definition for each PSF functional subsystem in the Printer Inventory.
- Create a PSF FSA definition for each PSF printer in the Printer Inventory.
- Edit your PSF startup procedures to specify that PSF is to obtain printer information from the Printer Inventory.

To use the Printer Inventory with PSF, change the printer startup procedure to specify `INV=piname` as the first parameter in the `PARM` field of the `EXEC` statement:

```plaintext
// EXEC PGM=APSPPIEP,PARM=('INV=piname')
```

where `piname` is the four-character name of the Printer Inventory

The `INV=piname` parameter indicates that PSF uses the Printer Inventory and obtains parameters from the specified Printer Inventory for each printer in the startup procedure. No other parameters in the `PARM` field are used when PSF uses the Printer Inventory.

Restart your PSF printers after you have started the Infoprint Central daemon (daemon aopssid). This is necessary because Infoprint Server automatically enables SNMP reporting (SNMP reporting option in the PSF FSA definition) if the Infoprint Central daemon is started. You must restart PSF printers after SNMP reporting has been enabled.

- You can use the Infoprint Server migration program, aopmig, to create the required PSF FSS and FSA definitions in the Printer Inventory.
- You can use Infoprint Server ISPF panels or the Printer Inventory Definition Utility (PIDU) to create and edit FSS and FSA definitions.
- You do not need to create PSF printer definitions in the Printer Inventory to use Infoprint Central. Printer definitions are required only if you want to print to PSF printers using Print Interface or NetSpool.
5.4.8 Customizing JES3 console standards (CONSTD statement)

The CONSTD statement in the JES3 initialization stream allows you to define standards for your JES3 console configuration. The EDIT parameter of the CONSTD statement lets you specify special characters to be used in editing commands processed by JES3 console services. If you code the EDIT parameter on the CONSTD statement, you must define an escape character so that Infoprint Central can escape special characters in filenames. You can omit the EDIT parameter, in which case JES3 uses the default escape character, which is the quotation mark (").

To specify the quotation mark (") as the escape character and the pound sign (#) as the backspace character, code:

```
EDIT=('",#,,)
```

5.4.9 Authorizing the AOPOPER group to RACF profiles

The user who starts Infoprint Server must be a member of the AOPOPER RACF group, or have a UID of zero (0). AOPOPER is the default group name for Infoprint Server operators. However, your installation can assign a different name to this group. Therefore, you can give the AOPOPER group access to the profiles in the OPERCMDS and JESSPOOL classes as shown in these examples.

If someone with a user ID of zero (0) who is not a member of the AOPOPER group starts Infoprint Server, also give that user access to the profiles. If you start Infoprint Server in the /etc/rc file, give the user ID ROOT access to the profiles.

Authorizing JES commands

Follow these steps to authorize the AOPOPER group to JES commands.

- Give the RACF group for Infoprint Server operators (AOPOPER group) access to profiles that protect all operator commands that Infoprint Central uses.

  Examples: If the group name for Infoprint Server operators is AOPOPER, enter these RACF commands to give this group UPDATE access to broad profiles in the OPERCMDS and JESSPOOL classes:

  JES2:
  ```
  PERMIT JES2.*.* CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  PERMIT MVS.MODIFY CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  PERMIT MVS.VARY.NET CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  ```

  JES3:
  ```
  PERMIT JES3.*.* CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  PERMIT JES3.*.*.* CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  PERMIT MVS.MODIFY CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  PERMIT MVS.VARY.NET CLASS(OPERCMDS) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  PERMIT I1.*.*.*.*D*. CLASS(JESSPOOL) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(AOPOPER)
  ```

  - Refresh the OPERCMDS and JESSPOOL classes.

    JES2:
    ```
    SETROPTS RACLST(OPERCMDS) REFRESH
    ```

    JES3:
    ```
    SETROPTS RACLST(OPERCMDS JESSPOOL) REFRESH
    ```
5.4.10 Setting up security for NetSpool logical units (LUs)

Infoprint Central lets users work with NetSpool logical units (LUs). You can define the AOP.NETSPOOL profile to restrict who can display, start, and stop NetSpool LUs.

```
RDEFINE PRINTSRV (AOP.NETSPOOL) UACC(NONE)
PERMIT AOP.NETSPOOL CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACC(CONTROL) ID(userid or groupid)
SETROPTS RACLIST(PRINTSRV) REFRESH
```

**Recommendation:** Define the AOP.NETSPOOL profile. Otherwise, any Infoprint Central user can display, start, and stop NetSpool LUs.

As previously mentioned, to authorize users to read the Printer Inventory, using either Infoprint Central or Infoprint Server ISPF panels, give the AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile in the PRINTSRV class universal READ access, or give all Infoprint Central users READ access.

**User access to the AOP.NETSPOOL resource profile**

To allow users to display, start, and stop NetSpool LUs, enter this RACF command:

```
PERMIT AOP.NETSPOOL CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(CONTROL) ID(userid or group)
```

**Note:** If a user has UPDATE access to the AOP.NETSPOOL profile, the AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile is not checked.

5.4.11 Setting up security for IP PrintWay job selection rules

Infoprint Central lets administrators work with IP PrintWay job selection rules. IP PrintWay job selection rules control which print jobs IP PrintWay extended mode selects to process from the JES spool. You can define RACF profiles to restrict who can start and stop job selection rules.

**Note:** Define profiles to protect job selection rules. Otherwise, any Infoprint Central user who is authorized to read the Printer Inventory can display, start, and stop job selection rules.

**Define resource profiles in the PRINTSRV class**

You can define a separate profile for each job selection rule, or you can define one profile for several or all job-selection rules. You can use the same profiles that you defined for printers if you want the same groups of users to start and stop job-selection rules.

You specify the RACF resource profile that applies to each rule in the job selection rule definition in the Printer Inventory, as shown in Figure 5-9 on page 99. Read access to AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile grants job selection rule displays.

Select any name for the profile that RACF allows. However, do not start the name with AOP, to avoid conflict with profile names that IBM uses. Profile names can be up to 64 characters. For example, to define a profile named POK.CLASSY for job-selection rule class-y, enter this RACF command:

```
RDEFINE PRINTSRV (POK.CLASSY) UACC(NONE)
```
To start and stop job-selection rules, give CONTROL access to the profile. READ access has no meaning for profiles that control job selection.

PERMIT POK.CLASSY CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(CONTROL) ID(userid or groupid)
SETROPTS RACLIST(PRINTSRV) REFRESH

**PIDU command to create a job selection rule**

If you prefer to use the `pidu` command, Figure 5-10 shows the specification of a job selection rule using the `pidu` command instead of the Infoprint Server ISPF application shown in Figure 5-9.

```sql
create job-selection-rule class-y
    job-selection-status =
    output-class-list = Y
    creator-userid = ROGERS
    dest-ip-address =
    destination-pattern = EMAIL10
    forms-list =
    jes-writer-pattern =
    operator-security-profile = POK.CLASSY
    description = "Start all jobs in class y" ; '
;
```

**Listing created job selection rules**

The panel shown in Figure 5-11 on page 100 lists all the job selection rules. IP PrintWay uses the job selection rules to determine which print jobs to select from the JES spool for printing. The attributes of the print job must match all of the values in a rule to be selected. This panel applies only to IP PrintWay extended mode.
Figure 5-12 shows a `pidu` command to display a job selection rule specification.

```
ROGERS:/u/rogers: > pidu -c "display job-selection-rule Class-Y;"

# display job-selection-rule Class-Y
output-class-list = {Y}
operator-security-profile = POK.CLASSY
destination-pattern = EMAIL10
creator-userid = ROGERS
description = "Start all jobs in class Y"
ROGERS:/u/rogers: >
```

Figure 5-12  The `pidu` command to display a job selection rule

### 5.4.12 Infoprint Central security checks

With Infoprint Central, you can protect who is authorized to access and control the following functions:

- Start and stop Infoprint Server daemons
- Display of printer and printer pool definitions
- Allow RACF auditing for access failures
- Allow access to change priority of print jobs

#### Setting up security for Infoprint Server daemons

Infoprint Central lets users display the status of Infoprint Server daemons to see whether they are started. You can define the resource profile AOP.DAEMON in the PRINTSRV class to restrict who can display daemons. If you do not define profile AOP.DAEMON, any Infoprint Central user can display the status of daemons. Infoprint Central does not let users start and stop daemons.

To authorize users to display the System Status, use the following profiles.

```
RDEFINE PRINTSRV AOP.DAEMON UACC(NONE)
PERMIT AOP.DAEMON CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(READ) ID(userid or groupid)
SETROPTS RACLIST(PRINTSRV) REFRESH
```
Figure 5-13 shows the display of the Infoprint Server daemons when selecting the System Status button. This panel displays the status of all Infoprint Server daemons and NetSpool tasks. This section is displayed only if your administrator has given you authority to see the status of Infoprint Server daemons. This panel lets you check whether Infoprint Server daemons and tasks are started.

**Note:** You cannot start and stop daemons or tasks from this panel. Ask your operator to start daemons with the `aopstart` command or AOPSTART procedure.

**Setting up security for printer and printer pool definitions**

Infoprint Central lets users display printer definitions and printer pool definitions in the Printer Inventory. Users can only display information in these definitions; they cannot change information.

Any Infoprint Central user who is authorized to read the Printer Inventory can display printer definitions and printer pool definitions.
You must define the AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile in the RACF PRINTSRV class to protect access to the Printer Inventory, as follows:

```plaintext
RDEFINE PRINTSRV(AOP.ADMINISTRATOR) UACC(NONE)
PERMIT AOP.ADMINISTRATOR CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(READ) ID(userid or groupid)
SETROPTS RACLIST(PRINTSRV) REFRESH
```

**READ**

This access lets users view the Printer Inventory using ISPF panels, Infoprint Central, or the Printer Inventory Definition Utility (PIDU). Users do not need READ access simply to list names of printer definitions with the `lpstat` command or with Infoprint Port Monitor.

**UPDATE**

This access lets users update the Printer Inventory using ISPF panels or PIDU, and lets users view the Printer Inventory using Infoprint Central.

### Requesting RACF notification and auditing

Infoprint Central checks a user's access to profiles before it displays any objects (such as printers or print jobs) and action buttons on its Web pages. It then displays only those objects and actions to which the user has access.

For the RACF profile that Infoprint Central checks, you must decide whether RACF should:

- Notify the security administrator (with a message) if an access check fails. If you want to receive RACF messages about access check failures in Infoprint Central, you must specify the RACF NOTIFY parameter for the profile. If the NOTIFY parameter is not specified, Infoprint Central suppresses RACF messages for access check failures.

- Log access checks to resources that are protected by the profile. Infoprint Central logs access checks as directed by the RACF AUDIT parameter for the profile.

**Recommendation:** Do not request notification or logging for RACF profiles that Infoprint Central checks. As an alternative, request that RACF log only access check failures greater than READ. This is because access check failures can be a normal occurrence as Infoprint Central builds its Web pages and determines which objects and actions to display. RACF messages and audit entries do not necessarily mean that the user asked to display an object or selected a printer action protected by the profile.

In addition, if you request notification (NOTIFY), you might receive numerous RACF messages for the same user and RACF profile because Infoprint Central sometimes checks the same profile numerous times as it builds Web pages.

### Priority of print jobs

Infoprint Central lets these job submitters do all actions on their own print jobs, regardless of whether they have access to the profiles that protect their print jobs. The AOP.PRIORITY profile is an exception. If you define the AOP.PRIORITY profile, job submitters must have UPDATE access to this profile to change the priority of their own print jobs.

Infoprint Central lets users change the priority of print jobs. To restrict who can change the priority of a print job, you can define the AOP.PRIORITY profile in the PRINTSRV class. If you do not define the AOP.PRIORITY profile, the job submitter and any other user with the required access to profiles in the OPERCMDS and JESSPOOL classes can change the priority of a print job.

```plaintext
RDEFINE PRINTSRV (AOP.PRIORITY) UACC(NONE)
PERMIT AOP.PRIORITY CLASS(PRINTSRV) ACCESS(UPDATE) ID(userid or groupid)
SETROPTS RACLIST(PRINTSRV) REFRESH
```
5.5 Work with Printers panel

Figure 5-14 is the first panel displayed after you log on to Infoprint Central. You can work with these types of printers:

**PSF printers**  A Print Services Facility™ (PSF) printer is an IBM Advanced Function Presentation (AFP) printer that PSF for z/OS controls. You can work with any PSF printer that your administrator has defined to both Infoprint Server and z/OS. Each PSF printer must be defined in an FSA definition in the Printer Inventory and in a JES initialization statement.

**IP PrintWay printers**  An IP PrintWay printer is typically: 1) a PCL or PostScript® printer in your TCP/IP network, or 2) VTAM-controlled printer in your SNA network. You can work with any IP PrintWay printer that your administrator has defined to Infoprint Server. Each IP PrintWay printer should be defined in a printer definition in the Printer Inventory.

**Buttons on left side of Work with Printers panel**
The meaning of the buttons on the left side of the panel in the navigation bar, from top to bottom, are as follows:

- Work with print jobs
- Work with printers
- Work with NetSpool logical units (LUs)
- Find printer definitions
- Check system status
- Help

![Navigation bar](image)

*Figure 5-14  Work with printers panel - primary panel*
Selecting options on this panel
Select whether you want to work with IP PrintWay printers, PSF printers, or both types of printers. Then enter one or more values to limit the number of printers displayed, as follows:

- You can select by printer name, location, hostname or IP address, or queue or port by typing the information in the field.
- If you want to see all printers that start with the letter p, simply type p in the Printer name field, as shown in Figure 5-14 on page 103.
- Then, press Find to display the next panel, which is shown in Figure 5-15 on page 105.

5.5.1 Working with printers

The Work with Printers panel lets you select the printers you want to work with. This panel lists IP PrintWay printers that you are authorized to see. The panel lets you work with several printers at the same time, and to link to more detailed information about one printer. To work with printers, you can do any of the following:

- Select the boxes next to the printers that you want to work with. To work with all printers in the list, select All.
- Select an action button.
- To view any error messages, select (Error).
- To view any information messages, select (Information).

Detailed printer information about a printer and do additional actions
Select the value in the Name or Printer host name or IP address field for the printer. On the IP PrintWay Printer Information panel, you can see more information about the printer and perform these additional actions: Ping, Redirect, and View log.

The print queue for a printer
Select the value in the Active job count field for the printer.

To see extended status information for a printer
Select the Web page icon in the Status field for the printer, which is shown in Figure 5-15 on page 105. This opens a new browser window with the URL set to the IP address of the printer. Not all printers have a Web page.) Also, if the printer is controlled by a print server, Infoprint Central cannot display the printer's Web page.

Using the buttons
There are two buttons for the printer, Start and Stop, as shown in Figure 5-15 on page 105 and explained here:

Start  This starts the selected printers. The printers begin processing print jobs.

- Results: You see an information or error message. If the message is not automatically displayed, select the Informational Messages icon to view the messages.
- If the action was successful, the status of the printers changes to either Idle or Processing.

Stop  Stops the selected printers so that IP PrintWay does not process any more print jobs for the printer. However, data that IP PrintWay has already transmitted to a printer and is already in the printer's buffer continues to print. Infoprint Server and JES continue to accept print requests for stopped printers and add print jobs to the printers' queues.
On the Stop Printer panel, you can select whether to stop the printer immediately or wait until the current print job completes printing. If you stop the printer immediately, the current print job is deleted.

![Image of Stop Printer panel]

**Attention:** To stop a printer immediately, but without deleting the current print job, follow these steps:
1. On the Stop Printer panel, select Complete the current print job and then select OK.
2. On the IP PrintWay Printer Information panel, expand the Print Job Queue section.
3. On the Infoprint Server Print Jobs panel, hold the print job that is processing.

If a printer is not working, you can redirect all print jobs to an alternate IP PrintWay printer after you stop it. To redirect a printer, select (Redirect).

To restart a stopped printer, select (Start).

If IP PrintWay is restarted, all stopped printers are automatically restarted.

### 5.5.2 IP PrintWay Information panel

The panel shown in Figure 5-16 on page 107 is a result of selecting a printer shown in Figure 5-15. This IP PrintWay printer panel lets you work with the selected printer and see detailed information about it.

#### Working with a printer action button

You can select one of the five action buttons, shown in Figure 5-16 on page 107. When the action completes, you see an error message or an information message.

**Redirection information**

The printer where this printer is redirected, or other printers that are redirected to this printer. You see this section only when redirections are in effect for this printer. When IP PrintWay is restarted, all redirections that are in effect are restored.
To redirect the printer to a different printer, select the value in the Name field. On the IP PrintWay Printer Information panel, select (Redirect).

To remove the redirection that is in effect, select the value in the Name field. On the IP PrintWay Printer Information panel, select (Restore).

When IP PrintWay is restarted, all redirections that are in effect are restored.

**Detailed information about the printer**

To view detailed information about the printer, expand all sections by selecting (Expand all) at the top of the panel. Or to expand one or more of the following sections, press an Expand button.

**Properties**

These are the basic properties of the printer.

**Print Job Queue**

These are print jobs that were submitted to this printer. This queue contains active jobs, including print jobs that are being processed, jobs are waiting to be processed, or jobs that are held. It also includes retained print jobs, which are print jobs that already completed but are retained for a period of time. Retained jobs are automatically deleted when the retention period expires. The print jobs will print in the order displayed.

If someone redirected this printer to another printer, you do not see active print jobs submitted to this printer because these print jobs are on the queue of the alternate printer. However, you can see print jobs that Infoprint Server retained before you redirected the printer. If you select (Release) to print retained print jobs, the print jobs print on the alternate printer. After you restore the printer, print jobs that were retained on the alternate printer remain on that printer's queue.

**Printer Definitions**

These are the printer definitions in the Printer Inventory for this printer. You see this section only when at least one printer definition exists for the printer.

**Printer's Web Page**

This is a link to the printer's Web page, which contains extended status information. Infoprint Central opens a new browser window with the URL set to the IP address of the printer. Not all printers have a Web page. Also, if the printer is controlled by a print server, Infoprint Central cannot display the printer's Web page. You see this section only when IP PrintWay uses either the LPR or direct sockets transmission protocol to send print jobs to the printer.
5.5.3 Ping a printer

When you select the Ping action button shown in Figure 5-16, then Figure 5-17 on page 108 shows the window that is displayed. The Response field displays the responses received from these commands:

**Ping**  
This tests the TCP/IP network connection to a remote printer or print server.

- **Success** means the TCP/IP network is working and the z/OS system can communicate with the printer. If you ping a printer instead of a print server, a successful response also means the printer is turned on. However, the printer might be offline.

- **Failure** means the printer did not respond in 1 second. This can occur if the network is not working, the printer is not turned on, or the remote host is slow to respond.

**LPQ**  
This provides information about jobs on the LPD's print queue. The information provided depends on the printer's implementation of the LPD. You can see a response from this command only for IP PrintWay printers that use the LPR to LPD protocol to communicate with the printer.

- **Success** means the LPD in the printer or print server is running. However, the printer might be offline.

- **Failure** means the TCP/IP network connection to the printer or print server is not working, the printer does not contain an LPD, or the LPD is not running.

**Ping considerations**

If the ping command is unsuccessful, consider the following:

- Select the Ping action button again to see if the problem persists.
Make sure the printer is turned on.

Make sure the value in the Printer host name or the IP address field on the Printer Information panel is correct. If the value in this field is not correct, ask your administrator to change the value in the Printer Inventory.

If the ping command is successful but print jobs are not printing, make sure the printer is online.

If the ping command is successful but print jobs are not printing on the expected printer, the printer's IP address might be a duplicate of another IP address in the system. To see if this is the case:

- Turn off the printer. For a PSF printer, also turn off the IPDS LAN attachment (such as the i-data 7913 IPDS Printer LAN Attachment) if one exists.
- Wait at least five minutes for the system to clear the TCP/IP Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) tables.
- Select the Ping action button again.
- If the ping command is still successful, a duplicate IP address exists.

**LPQ considerations**

If the LPQ command is successful and the response from the LPQ command indicates that the print queue does not exist, make sure the value in the Queue field on the Printer Information panel is correct. The print queue name is case-sensitive so be sure the correct uppercase and lowercase letters are used. If the value in this field is not correct, ask your administrator to change the value in the Printer Inventory.
5.5.4 Redirect a printer

To see the panel shown in Figure 5-18 on page 110, select the Redirect action button shown in Figure 5-16 on page 107. The Redirect IP PrintWay Printer panel lets you move all print jobs currently on the queue of the selected IP PrintWay printer and all print jobs that are subsequently submitted to this printer to an alternate IP PrintWay printer. When you select the alternate printer, consider the following:

- The alternate printer must be an IP PrintWay printer.
- If a printer definition does not exist for the alternate printer in the Printer Inventory, the printer must support either the LPR or direct-sockets printing protocol.
- The alternate printer must not itself be redirected to an alternate printer.
- The alternate printer should be able to print the same types of data streams (for example, PostScript or PCL) as the original printer so that data prints correctly.

**Printer selected for redirect**

To specify the printer where you want to redirect all print jobs, select how you want to specify the alternate printer, as follows:

**Printer definition**

Enter the name of the printer definition for the alternate printer. IP PrintWay redirects print jobs to the printer address specified in this printer definition. However, IP PrintWay continues to use attributes in the printer definition for the original printer to format data.

**Host name or IP address**

Enter either the host name or dotted-decimal IP address of the alternate printer.

**Redirect considerations**

To list printer definitions, select **Find printer definitions** from the navigation bar.

Select **Host name or IP address** if no printer definition exists for the printer.

- If you select **Host name or IP address**, enter either the print queue name or the port number of the alternate printer. Then select either Queue or Port to identify the type of value you entered. Then select **OK**.
5.5.5 Using the stop button

You can start and stop IP PrintWay and PSF printers. When you stop a printer, you can select whether the print job that is currently processing is to be completed or deleted. You might want to stop a printer that is not working. You might need to restart PSF printers after the z/OS system is IPLed. Printers might be started and stopped automatically in the following situations:

- When the operator restarts IP PrintWay, stopped printers are automatically restarted.
- When the operator cancels the PSF functional subsystem (FSS), printers that the FSS controls are automatically stopped.
- When the z/OS system is IPLed, any IP PrintWay printers that you had stopped are restarted. If IP PrintWay printers are not working after the IPL, make sure that the IP PrintWay daemons are started on the System Status panel.
- When the z/OS system is reIPLed, all PSF printers are stopped unless your administrator defined them to JES with the automatic start option.

To stop printers:

- Select (Work with printers) from the navigation bar.
- On the Work with Printers panel, enter search values to find the printer.
- On the IP PrintWay Printers or PSF Printers panel, select the box next to the printer and select Stop to stop the printer. You can stop more than one printer at the same time.
Options to stop printers
When you select the stop action button shown in the Figure 5-19, the Stop Printer - Web Page Dialog panel appears on the window and lets you stop a printer. Select the action to do for any print jobs that are being processed on that printer.

To select the action to do for the current print job, select one of these options:

- **Complete the current print job**: The current print job finishes.
- **Delete the current print job**: The current print job is deleted from the JES spool.
- **Select OK**.

![Select printer to stop](image)

**Figure 5-19** Stopping a printer options

### 5.5.6 Work with Print Jobs panel

The Work with Print Jobs panel lets you select the print jobs you want to work with. You can work with any print jobs that are currently on the JES spool. You can also see information about any Infoprint Server print jobs that have already finished processing.

**Finding print jobs**
Select the type of print jobs to display. Select either Infoprint Server print jobs or JES print jobs. The type you choose determines which print jobs are displayed, how much information you see about the print jobs, and which actions you can do on print jobs. The type you choose also changes which search fields are available on this panel.

**Infoprint Server print jobs**
Select Infoprint Server print jobs. This option lets you:

- See more information about Infoprint Server print jobs, such as more detailed status.
- Perform more actions on Infoprint Server print jobs, such as move a print job to another printer.
See information, including messages, for Infoprint Server print jobs that have finished processing and are no longer on the JES spool.

Search for print jobs using search values known only to Infoprint Server, such as the Windows logon name of the job submitter.

In Figure 5-20 on page 113l, the selection is for Job ID and because all print jobs have a Job ID starting with PS, this selects all of those jobs.

**JES print jobs**

If the print job is not found, select **JES print jobs**. This option lets you:

- Work with print jobs that Infoprint Server does not process, such as print jobs submitted directly to a PSF-controlled printer using JCL.
- Work with print jobs that Infoprint Server has not received due to an error in job submission. For example, job submitters might fail to specify the correct CLASS value on their DD or OUTPUT JCL statements, so IP PrintWay does not select the print jobs from the JES spool.

**Find print job option 2**

A separate option could be to enter a value in the Submitted within field to limit the number of jobs found. Do not enter a value if you want to find all possible print jobs. Use this field as follows:

- Enter a value in at least one of the search fields. If you enter values in more than one field, only print jobs that match all values are displayed.
  - Do not enter an asterisk (*) or a question mark (?) as a wildcard symbol.
  - If you enter only the first characters of a value in a search field instead of the full value, clear Show only exact matches.
  - If you do not know the correct uppercase and lowercase letters for case-sensitive fields, then selecting Clear shows only exact matches.

**Save button**

Select **Save** to save these search values. The saved search values are displayed the next time you use this panel when you select the **Find** button.
5.5.7 Infoprint Server print jobs

Figure 5-21 on page 114 lists Infoprint Server print jobs that you are authorized to see. This panel lets you work with several print jobs at the same time. You can also link to more detailed information about one print job and to related objects.

Working with print jobs
Select the boxes next to the print jobs that you want to work with. To work with all print jobs in the list, select All. You can select an action button to do one of the following:

- To view any error messages, select (Error).
- To view any information messages, select (Information).

Detailed information about a print job
Select the value in the Job ID field for the print job. On the Infoprint Server Print Job Information panel that is displayed, which is shown in Figure 5-22 on page 115, you can see more information about the print job and do these additional actions:

- Change priority
- Move
- View properties
- View log

Additional actions
To see information about the printer where the print job is to print or has printed, and to work with that printer, select (IP PrintWay printer) in the Printer field for the print job. This field is blank if the printer is not an IP PrintWay printer or if IP PrintWay has not yet received the print job.
To see the printer definition used to format a print job, select the value in the Printer definition field for the print job.

5.5.8 Print job information

Figure 5-22 on page 115 displays information about an Infoprint Server print job. This panel lets you work with the print job and to see detailed information about the print job. To work with a print job, select an action button. When the action completes, you see an error message or an information message. To see detailed information, select (Expand) to expand one of these sections:

- **Properties**: The basic properties of the print job. To see all properties and change some of them, select (View properties).
- **Documents**: The documents in the print job.
- **Printer**: The IP PrintWay printer where the print job prints. You see this section only if the print job is on the queue of an IP PrintWay printer. The printer is not displayed if the printer is not currently printing and no printer definition exists for the printer.
- **Printer Definition**: The printer definition used to process the print job.
- **NetSpool LU**: The NetSpool logical unit (LU) that received print data from a VTAM application and created the print job. You see this section only if the print request was submitted from a VTAM application (such as CICS and IMS).

**Change print output priority**

To change the print job priority, select the Change priority button.

Figure 5-22 on page 115 displays information about an Infoprint Server print job. This panel lets you work with the print job and to see detailed information about the print job. To work with a print job, select an action button. When the action completes, you see an error message or an information message.
To see detailed information, select (Expand) to expand one of these sections:

- **Properties:** The basic properties of the print job. To see all properties and change some of them, select (View properties).
- **Documents:** The documents in the print job.
- **Printer:** The IP PrintWay printer where the print job prints. You see this section only if the print job is on the queue of an IP PrintWay printer. The printer is not displayed if the printer is not currently printing and no printer definition exists for the printer.
- **Printer Definition:** The printer definition used to process the print job.
- **NetSpool LU:** The NetSpool logical unit (LU) that received print data from a VTAM application and created the print job. You see this section only if the print request was submitted from a VTAM application (such as CICS and IMS).

### Change print output priority

To change the print job priority, Select the Change priority button.

![Infoprint Server Print Job Information panel](image)

#### 5.5.9 Change print output priority

Figure 5-23 on page 116 lets you change the priority of a print job. The priority can affect how soon the print job will print.

To specify a new priority for the print job, do the following:

- Enter the new priority in the Priority field.
- Select OK.
Print output priority
The priority of print output has a range between 0 and 255. This initial priority of the print output is the priority of the submitter, which is normally between 0 and 15.

This panel appears on top of the Print Job Information

- The current priority of the print output is 15
- Overtype that to specify the new priority

![Figure 5-23  Panel to change print output priority](image-url)
Messages and diagnosis

When data is not processed as expected (for example, output does not format as expected; separator pages do not print as expected; or printer definitions cannot be accessed), it might not always be clear which components of Infoprint Server are involved. Finding the source of the problem usually requires figuring out which component of Infoprint Server to address.

This chapter describes the diagnostic tools you can use to collect information about Infoprint Server software problems. The information you collect may be of assistance when you communicate with IBM Support Center representatives as they work to isolate the source of a problem in a Infoprint Server component.

The chapter explains the following steps used to investigate and analyze a problem:

- Performing problem determination
- Determining system problem indications
- Analyzing logs and error information
- Looking at dumps and traces
6.1 Problems with the Web server

If you encounter Web server problems using Infoprint Central from the browser, the error messages appear in a file system file. As an example, Figure 6-1 shows an example of an error message related to the Web server.

The HTTP configuration file contains the following default statement.

```
ErrorLog /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/logs/httpd-error
```

Replace this statement with the following statements. In this example, there is an zFS file system that contains all the Web server files. The directory path name used in the examples is /web/printway. Each installation should choose a path name that is useful.

```
AccessLog     /web/printway/logs/httpd-log
AgentLog      /web/printway/logs/agent-log
RefererLog    /web/printway/logs/referer-log
ErrorLog      /web/printway/logs/httpd-errors
CgiErrorLog   /web/printway/logs/cgi-error
```

Use these directives to specify the path and file name where you want the server to log internal errors. The server starts a new log file each day at midnight if it is running. Otherwise, the server starts a new log file the first time you start it on a given day.

When creating the file, the server uses the file name you specify and appends a date suffix. The date suffix is in the format Mmmddyyyy, where Mmm is the first three letters of the month; dd is the day of the month; and yyyy is the year.

![Figure 6-1   Infoprint Central panel display with a Web server error](image)

Find error logs

To find the error messages, go to the ISHELL. Enter the path name used by your system for these files; here is an example:

```
/web/printway/logs/
```

Figure 6-2 on page 119 shows the error log files where you can see the messages related to the Web server errors. To view the error messages, type b (for Browse) next to the file.
6.1.1 Web server tracing

For problems associated with the HTTP Web server, you can turn on the tracing options. The level of tracing provided is:

- `-v trace` First level
- `-vv trace` Second level
- `-mtv` Third level
- `-debug` For maximum tracing
- `-vc` To trace caching

SYS1.SAMPLIB(IMWEBSRV) contains the default HTTP server procedure that has statements you can specify in the procedure, as displayed in Figure 6-3 on page 120. The procedure used in the examples is shown in Figure 5-3 on page 82. For Web server tracing, you can activate these options by removing the commented statements.

It is recommended that you turn on tracing only if instructed to do so by IBM support personnel. IBM support personnel can provide guidance about the most appropriate trace for your problem. To turn off tracing, use the `-nodebug` option.

The `-v`, `-vv`, and `-mtv` flags represent a progression of increasing trace verbosity. They do not need to be used in combination with each other. If more than one of these flags is set, the first flag encountered sets the initial verbosity; all other flags are ignored.

The `-v`, or Verbose, option turns on first level tracing to stderr. Verbose tracing provides basic tracing information about all requests, without significantly impacting Web server performance. The design of the fields supports automatic parsing of the information. The trace output is written into the SYSPUT DD statement in the HTTP procedure.
The vv, or Very Verbose, option turns on second level tracing to stderr. The -mtv, or Much Too Verbose, option turns on third level tracing to stderr.

```c
/*** HTTP Server Parameters:
/***    -SN                        # WLM - subsystem name
/***    -AE                       # WLM - Application Environment
/***    -fscp nnn                 # File system codepage - EBCDIC
/***    -netcp nnn                # net code page - ASCII
/***    -gc_only                  # clean cache & exit (garbage collect)
/***    -normalmode               # clean cache & exit (garbage collect)
/***    -p nnnn                   # use port nnn (default 80)
/***    -sslmode                  # use port nnn (default 443)
/***    -nosec                    # no security
/***    -nosmf                    # no smf processing on
/***    -smf                      # smf processing on
/***    -r /etc/httpd.conf        # use rule file xxxx
/***    -restart                  # trace to stderr
/***    -v                        # trace to stderr
/***    -vv                       # trace all to stderr
/***    -vc                       # cache trace to stderr
/***    -version                 # show version and exit
/***    xxxxxxx                   # ServerRoot xxxxxxx; Pass /*
```

Figure 6-3 HTTP optional parameters in the HTTP procedure

### 6.2 Messages in Infoprint Server

If an error message is displayed, the message prefix identifies which component sent the message. A displayed or printed message can appear by itself or with other information, such as a time stamp. The first three or four characters of a messages usually identify the component that issued this message.

Infoprint Server components use the following message prefixes:

- **ANFM**: IP Printway basic mode
- **AOP**: Print Interface and IP Printway extended mode
- **API**: NetSpool
- **AOX**: Infoprint Server Transforms

In an environment like Infoprint Server it is also possible that the message is written to the printer, because that is the place where a user might look first.

### 6.3 Infoprint Server common message log

The Infoprint Server common message log contains messages from all components of Infoprint Server except for IP PrintWay basic mode and Infoprint Server Transforms. If you want non-console messages that are written only to the Infoprint Server common message log to be sent to the hardcopy log, you can enable the hardcopy log function. That is, the Infoprint Server message configuration file, aopmsg.conf, lets you customize message
processing. The hardcopy log is either the system log (SYSLOG) or the operations log (OPERLOG), depending on how you configured the hardcopy medium in the HARDCOPY statement in the CONSOLxx Parmlib member.

Save messages in the common message log on a regular basis so that you do not lose messages that you might need to diagnose a problem. Infoprint Server automatically deletes messages from the common message log after the retention time expires. The retention time is specified in the log-retention attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file, aopd.conf.

You can use the Infoprint Server aoplogu command to save messages in the common message log to an HFS or zFS file. The aoplogu command does not let you save messages to an MVS data set. To use the aoplogu command, you must be a member of the AOPADMIN group.

The Infoprint Server message log is the common place where you should look first for messages. However, be aware that Infoprint Server automatically deletes messages from the common message log after the retention time expires. The retention time is specified in the log-retention attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (aopd.conf). To see messages from IP PrintWay extended mode, specify a value greater than zero (0) in this attribute.

Messages are divided into two categories: current and historical. After the job is removed from the system, all messages belonging to this job are moved from current log to the historical log. Depending on the retention period, you can review any jobs that were processed by infoprint Server.

### 6.3.1 Common message log

The common message log allows you to see messages from most Infoprint Server components in one place. Also, the log contains error messages from Infoprint transforms that fail. If a transform completes successfully, messages related to problems in the input data stream are written at the end of the output, instead of to the common message log.

IP PrintWay extended mode writes its messages only to the common message log. Other components, such as NetSpool and Print Interface, write their messages to the common message log (as shown in Figure 6-4 on page 122), and also to other locations such as the NetSpool message-log data set and the system console log.

An administrator must customize the common message log to specify how many days of messages to keep. The default is that no messages are kept in the common message log.
6.3.2 Browsing the common message log

You can view and process messages in the common message log in the following ways:

- Authorized Infoprint Central users can view messages for selected print jobs and IP PrintWay printers. See “View messages with Infoprint Central” on page 129 for more information about this topic.
- Infoprint Server administrators can use the `aoplogu` command to select messages in a particular time range and copy them to a file or view them on the terminal.
- Infoprint Server administrators can send all or selected messages to the z/OS system log (SYSLOG) or operations log (OPERLOG) for message automation.

To view messages, there is a simple way to browse the log:

- On the ISPF command panel, type `ISHELL` followed by the directory specified in the base-directory attribute in the Infoprint Server configuration file (aopd.conf).
- The subdirectory for common log is logs, as shown in Figure 6-5 on page 123. Add them to the base-directory attribute.
Press Enter and type `b` (for Browse) next to the log file you want to see, as shown in Figure 6-6.

You will be shown all messages in the Infoprint Server common message log; see Figure 6-7 on page 124.
Figure 6-7 Infoprint Server common message log

Note that this is not the recommended way to view messages, because the messages are unformatted. However, because the message log is a flat file, the log can be processed with UNIX scripts, REXX programs, or ISPF macros.

6.3.3 Using the aoplogu command

The aoplogu command lets administrators view messages in the common message log. This utility transforms messages into a more readable form. You can specify that you want to view:

- All messages
- Messages in a range of time (for example, messages from 1 May 2007 to 31 May 2007, or messages beginning on 6 May 2007)
- The most recent messages for a length of time (for example, messages for the last day or for the last two minutes)

The aoplogu command returns messages in this format:

date time priority:level user:id [job:id] [filename:name] [dsn:name] [output_device:name] [job_selection_rule:name] [fsa:name] [luname:name] [jes_jobname:name] [program:name] msg:message

For example:


**Important:** The Universal Time Coordinated (UTC), as a universal reference, is used for time stamps in the common message log. The TZ environment variable maps that reference time to the local time specified with the variable.

You must run the aoplogu command in a UNIX System Service environment.
However, you can use the aoplogu utility as a batch job from TSO by using the AOPBATCH program. With AOPBATCH, you can set up the z/OS UNIX environment. Figure 6-9 shows an example of how to use **aoplogu** by using AOPBATCH to look for messages in the last three days.

![Figure 6-8 aoplogu in the UNIX System Service environment](image)

**Format of aoplogu command**

The command has the following format:

```
aoplogu [-b time] [-e time] or aoplogu -l time
```

The format of time can be one of these:

```
year:month:day:hour:minute
month:day:hour:minute
day:hour:minute
hour:minute
minute
```

The options are:

- **-b** The beginning time of the range of messages that you want to view. The default is the oldest message that is available in the common message log.

- **-e** The ending time of the range of messages that you want to view. The default is the most recent message that is available in the common message log.

- **-l** The most recent messages for the length of time that you specify.

![Figure 6-9 Sample AOPBATCH to read the Infoprint Server message log](image)
6.3.4 Messages to the hardcopy log

In the configuration file aopmsg.conf, which is shown in Figure 6-10, you can enable the Infoprint Server hardcopy log function. The hardcopy log function sends additional Infoprint Server messages to the z/OS system hardcopy log so that you can use a z/OS message automation facility to process these messages.

To create or modify the aopmsg.conf configuration file, follow these steps:

1. The user ID must be zero (0), or be able to switch into superuser mode.
2. Copy the sample message configuration file from /usr/lpp/Printsrv/samples/aopmsg.conf, to /etc/Printsrv/aopmsg.conf.
3. Change the owner of the file to UID 0:
   ```bash
   chown 0 /etc/Printsrv/aopmsg.conf
   ```
4. Change the group owner to AOPADMIN. AOPADMIN is the suggested RACF group name for Infoprint Server administrators. However, you might have used a different name for this group.
   ```bash
   chgrp AOPADMIN /etc/Printsrv/aopmsg.conf
   ```
5. Edit the message configuration file using your preferred editor and save your changes.

```bash
aopmsg.conf - Infoprint Server Message Configuration file
#   This file is optional. If it is specified, the default location is:
#       /etc/Printsrv/aopmsg.conf
#   In this file, you can request that Infoprint Server send additional
#   messages to the z/OS system hardcopy log. If this file does not exist,
#   only messages that Infoprint Server writes to the console are sent to
#   the hardcopy log.
#
#   You can specify these attributes in the file:
#       hardcopy-messages = all | list | none
#       hardcopy-message-list = {message1 message2 ...}
#   -----------------------------------------------------------------------------
# Uncomment the line below to send all eligible messages to the hardcopy log.
# Eligible messages include messages from Infoprint Server daemons, but not
# messages from IP PrintWay basic mode. For more information about which
# messages are eligible to be sent to the hardcopy log, see:
# "z/OS Infoprint Server Customization."
# hardcopy-messages = all
#   -----------------------------------------------------------------------------
# Uncomment the two lines below to send messages AOP3614I and AOP3803E to
# the hardcopy log.
# # hardcopy-messages = list
# # hardcopy-message-list = {AOP1181 AOP119I AOP048E AOP3417I AOP120I AOP3417I }
#   -----------------------------------------------------------------------------
# Uncomment the line below to send no additional messages to the hardcopy log.
# This is the default action if this file does not exist or the
# hardcopy-messages attribute is not specified.
# # hardcopy-messages = none
```

Figure 6-10   aopmsg.conf configuration file
**Selecting a hardcopy option**

Choose the first option as follows:

```
hardcopy-messages = all | list | none
```

Where:

- **all**  
  Sends all eligible messages to the hardcopy log.

- **list**  
  Sends only the additional messages that are listed in the `hardcopy-message-list` attribute to the hardcopy log.

- **none**  
  Sends no additional messages to the hardcopy log. Only console messages are sent to the hardcopy log. This is the default.

Choose the second option as follows:

```
hardcopy-message-list = {messageID messageID ...}
```

These are the message IDs of the messages that Infoprint Server sends to the hardcopy log when the `hardcopy-messages=list` attribute is specified. Specify the *entire* message ID, including the severity code (E, I, S, T, or W). You can use either upper case or lower case characters. As shown, enclose the list of messages in braces, and separate message IDs with spaces.

The default is: **none**

**Messages in the hardcopy**

Figure 6-11 on page 128 displays Infoprint Server messages in the hardcopy log.
Hardcopy considerations

If you do not enable the hardcopy log function, only messages that Infoprint Server sends to the console are sent to the hardcopy log. (Infoprint Server sends messages to the console that require the attention of an operator or administrator.) However, if you want non-console messages that are written only to the Infoprint Server common message log to be sent to the hardcopy log, you must enable the hardcopy log function.

The hardcopy log is either the system log (SYSLOG) or the operations log (OPERLOG), depending on how you configured the hardcopy medium in the HARDCOPY statement in the CONSOLxx parmlib member.

Notes:
- To use the hardcopy log function, you do not need to enable the common message log.
- The hardcopy log function cannot log messages from other programs, such as messages from IP PrintWay basic mode.
- If you change this attribute while any Infoprint Server daemons are running, restart all daemons.

6.3.5 A REXX tool to view the common message log

The Infoprint Server common message log is a simple flat file. This file can easily be read; scanned; and viewed partially.
A REXX program started under ISPF can bring up a panel where you can enter all needed information to select messages from the message log. It is useful when additional search keywords can be entered, so you can limit the number of messages to just those belonging to a certain user or printer.

The REXX program is invoked with the command `aoplgbref`.

**Note:** The REXX program to view the common message log is shown in Appendix D, “View the common message log tool” on page 193.

---

### 6.4 View messages with Infoprint Central

Infoprint Central is the recommended tool to search for messages. From the Infoprint Server perspective, all messages belong to an object, which can be either a printer object or a job object. Messages can belong to current print jobs; when customized, they are also kept for historical print jobs.

Infoprint Central lets authorized users view messages in the common message log for selected print jobs and IP PrintWay extended mode printers. In addition, Infoprint Server administrators can use the `aoplogu` command to select messages in a particular time range and copy them to a file or view them on the terminal.

#### 6.4.1 IP PrintWay Printer Information panel

From the Infoprint Central primary panel (shown in Chapter 5 in Figure 5-14 on page 103 and Figure 5-15 on page 105), you select a printer from the panel.

Then Figure 6-13 on page 130 will be displayed. The circled icon in this figure is the View log. When you select the View log, it displays all messages from the Infoprint Server common message log for the printer.
View log
Selecting the circled View log button brings you to Figure 6-14. This panel lists all messages from Infoprint Server for the selected printer. This panel also contains messages that record each action that Infoprint Central performed and the user ID of the user who selected the action. The fields preceding and following the message text contain additional information, such as the time the message was sent.

IP PrintWay Printer Log panel
To change the number of messages displayed, do the following:

- In the Issued within: field, select Days or Hours. Then select the number of days or the number of hours of messages you want to see. Infoprint Central displays all messages from that time period up to the maximum number.
- In the Maximum messages to return field, specify the maximum number (1 - 999) of messages you want to see.
- Select Refresh.
6.4.2 Infoprint Server Print Job Information panel

From the Infoprint Central primary panel shown in Figure 5-20 on page 113 and Figure 5-21 on page 114, you select a job. Then the Infoprint Server Print Job Information panel shown in Figure 6-15 is displayed. From this panel, you can see more information about the print job and perform additional actions, such as:

- Change priority
- Move
- View properties
- View log, as shown in Figure 6-15 with the circled icon

![Infoprint Server Print Job Information panel](image)

Infoprint Server Print Job Log

Infoprint Server provides support to Infoprint Central for quick access and display of Infoprint Server job and output device objects, including their searchable attributes and associated messages for help desk agents and end-users.

Infoprint Central also guarantees that job objects and some attributes, such as status and messages, are accessible for some period of time after a job has completed or failed. In other words, information about an Infoprint Server job is accessible independent of the Infoprint Server job's existence on the JES spool.
No client software is required. You simply start Infoprint Central in a Web browser, and click the appropriate icon. It is possible that end users can check the status of their own jobs, which can eliminate some calls to the help desk by allowing the users to perform their own problem determination.

**Restriction:** Infoprint Central cannot show messages that were issued by other products, such as PSF for z/OS or JES.

### 6.4.3 View log for a printer

Infoprint Central lets authorized users view messages in the common message log for selected print jobs and IP PrintWay extended mode printers. In addition, Infoprint Server administrators can use the `aplogu` command to select messages in a particular time range and copy them to a file or view them on the terminal. Enter this command from the z/OS UNIX command line.

The view log displays all messages from the Infoprint Server common message log for the printer. Messages from Infoprint Server Transforms and other transforms are not displayed. Ask your administrator to find those messages.

**Result:** The IP PrintWay Printer Log panel displays the messages.
6.4.4 Viewing the printer log

IP PrintWay Printer Log panel lists messages from Infoprint Server for the selected printer. Fields before and after the message text contain additional information, such as the time the message was sent.

For more information about each message, you can use the z/OS LookAt online facility from the Internet:


You can also use your z/OS TSO/E host system to obtain more information about messages. You can install code on your z/OS or z/OS.e systems to access IBM message explanations by using LookAt from a TSO/E command line (for example: TSO/E prompt, ISPF, or z/OS UNIX System Services).

Note that messages from Print Services Facility (PSF), Infoprint Server Transforms, and other transforms for print jobs are not displayed. Ask your administrator for those messages.

Controlling messages displayed

In the panel shown in Figure 6-18 on page 134, you can change the number of messages displayed, as follows:

- In the Issued within: field, select the number of days of messages you want to see.
- In the Maximum messages to return field, specify the number (1 - 999) of messages you want to see.
- Select Refresh.
6.4.5 Messages from the OPERLOG

The common message log lets you see messages from most Infoprint Server components in one place. The log contains messages from all components of Infoprint Server except for IP PrintWay basic mode. It does not contain messages from Infoprint Server Transforms or other transform products.

IP PrintWay extended mode writes its messages only to the common message log. Other components, such as NetSpool and Print Interface, write their messages to other locations such as the NetSpool message-log data set and the system console log, as well as to the common message log.

Your administrator must customize the common message log to specify how many days of messages to keep. As previously mentioned, the default is that no messages are kept in the common message log.

Infoprint Central lets authorized users view messages in the common message log for selected print jobs and IP PrintWay extended mode printers. In addition, Infoprint Server administrators can use the aoplogu command to select messages in a particular time range and copy them to a file or view them on the terminal.

Note: The OPERLOG massages shown in Figure 6-19 are not written by the Infoprint Server. They are extracted from the common message log by a started task running a REXX exec that uses the aoplogu command to retrieve the messages and write (WTO) them to the OPERLOG.
Figure 6-19  Viewing the printer log messages in the OPERLOG

+AOP3505I IP PrintWay stopped the printer. - VAINI
+AOP3012I IP PrintWay accepted the request to stop the printer. - VAINI
AOPD001 VAINI1  (JOB31082) Prt: ILPODIP - WTSCPLX4 VAINI
PS009716 LIST#AA# from: VAINI / SC65
+AOP120I Job 9716 //u.clist(aa) started spooling to ILPODIP with transform afp2ps.dll -c ed duplex=yes. - JOB31082 - VAINI P
+AOP119I Job 9716 //u.clist(aa) completed spooling with status "pending". - JOB31082 - VAINI PS009716
+AOP3504I IP PrintWay started the printer. - VAINI
+AOP3011I IP PrintWay accepted the request to start the printer. - VAINI
+AOP3613I Job 9716 was completed. - JOB31082 - HAIMO PS009716
+AOP3012I IP PrintWay accepted the request to stop the printer.
+AOP3505I IP PrintWay stopped the printer. - VAINI
AOPD001 VAINI1  (JOB31083) Prt: ILPODIP - WTSCPLX4 VAINI
PS009718 LIST#AA# from: VAINI / SC65
+AOP120I Job 9718 //u.clist(aa) started spooling to ILPODIP with transform afp2ps.dll -c ed duplex=yes. - JOB31083 - VAINI P
+AOP119I Job 9718 //u.clist(aa) completed spooling with status "pending". - JOB31083 - VAINI PS009718
+AOP3011I IP PrintWay accepted the request to start the printer. - VAINI
+AOP3504I IP PrintWay started the printer. - VAINI
+AOP3613I Job 9718 was completed. - JOB31083 - HAIMO PS009718
Chapter 7. Code page translation

This chapter describes how Infoprint Server converts line and text data from one encoding system into another one before transmitting a data set to the remote printer. Two of the most common encoding systems in use today are the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) and the Extended Binary Coded Decimals Interchange Code (EBCDIC).

In fact, ASCII and EBCDIC are just examples. For information interchange, it is mandatory that data can be converted from one code page into another. Infoprint Server can use either the `iconv` utility or a TCP/IP translation table to convert data.

This chapter contains information about encoding systems. It discusses the concept of code pages. The following topics are discussed:

- Extended Binary Coded Decimals Interchange Code (EBCDIC)
- American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)
- Printer code page
- Document code page
- `iconv` utility
- Unicode Services
- Old-style translation
7.1 Data representation

Each character in a document data stream has a unique code, which is called a *code point*. Because each character can theoretically be assigned to every code point, encoding systems were created. Documents may be represented by a variety of code pages, such as:

ISO 8859-1, IBM-850, ROMAN8, .......

Consider, for example, *a-acute*:

- It is represented by x’E1’ in ISO 8859-1.
- It is represented by x’A0’ in the IBM IBM-850.
- It is represented by x’C4’ in the HP ROMAN8.

ISO 8859-1, IBM-850, and the HP ROMAN8 encode the Latin1 character set.

These encoding systems were established many years ago for the purpose of providing vehicles for the interchange and presentation of data. Encoding systems such as ASCII and EBCDIC provide conventions for the placement of commonly used characters by means of code pages.

A *code page* is a table that associates character identifiers with code points, as shown in Figure 7-1 on page 139. Today, the printer code page being used often differs from the document code page which was used to encode line or text data.

Figure 7-1 on page 139 shows the encoding scheme used by code page 1047 (Latin1 Open Systems). This code page is the recommended code page for z/OS UNIX System Service.
7.2 The iconv utility

Infoprint Server uses the iconv utility to convert data between two code pages. The iconv utility converts a sequence of characters from one encoded character set (fromCodeSet) into a sequence of corresponding characters in another encoded character set (toCodeSet). You can specify the document-codepage and printer-codepages attribute that Infoprint Server uses as the source and target encoded character sets.

The iconv utility reads characters from the input file, converts them from fromCodeSet encoding to toCodeSet encoding, and writes them to the output file. The conversion is performed by the code conversion functions of the run-time library.

**IP PrintWay extended mode**

IP PrintWay extended mode uses the iconv utility to convert data between EBCDIC and ASCII. The iconv utility converts data from one code page to another; that is, from the code page used to create the document to the code page used by the printer. For more information
about the iconv utility, see z/OS XL C/C++ Programming Guide, SC09-4765. Print Interface and NetSpool also use iconv to convert data from EBCDIC to ASCII.

**IP PrintWay basic mode**

IP PrintWay basic mode can use one of these methods to convert data between EBCDIC and ASCII:

- The iconv utility (default method) converts data from one code page to another, from the code page used to create the document to the code page used by the printer.
- Print Interface and NetSpool also use iconv to convert data from EBCDIC to ASCII. IBM recommends using this method because you can specify attributes in the printer definition that are suitable for both Print Interface and IP PrintWay. By default, IP PrintWay uses this method.
- TCP/IP translation tables. For compatibility with previous releases, you can request that IP PrintWay use either the standard TCP/IP translation table supplied by IBM or a customized TCP/IP translate table created using the CONVXLAT program. For information about using translation tables and the CONVXLAT program, see z/OS Communications Server: IP Configuration Reference, SC31-8776.

**Note:** In z/OS V1R9, if _ICONV_MODE is not set to C, iconv will go directly to Unicode Services to perform character conversions without looking for any Language Environment-style user-created tables.

### 7.2.1 Creating a conversion table

If you want to print line data or text encoded data in a coded character set that does not have a one-to-one mapping to the printer code page (encoded character set used by the output device), create your own conversion table and compile it with the genxlt utility. Infoprint Server can use your own conversion table to convert your document to the printer code page being required.

- Gather needed characters
- Map the code points
- Compile the table
- Update the code set name table

**Note:** Commonly used encode character sets are already provided by IBM.

### 7.2.2 Determine the glyph represented for each code point

Each EBCDIC coded character set consists of a mapping of all the available glyphs to their respective hex encodings and unique Graphic Character Global Identifiers (GCGIDs). GCGIDs are unique identifiers assigned to each character in the Unicode standard. A glyph is the printed appearance of a character. Each coded character set serves one linguistic environment.

You must map each code point in the fromCodeSet to the correct code point in the toCodeSet in order to produce the desired glyph, and it is a very simple mapping. Each graphic character (glyph) in a font has a unique name and can be assigned to a code point in each code set. Continue to fill up Table 7-1 on page 141 with all characters you are going to use.
Table 7-1  Sample conversion table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fromCodeSet IBM-1047</th>
<th>toCodeSet IBM-437 (PC-8)</th>
<th>glyph</th>
<th>global character identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x7C</td>
<td>0x40</td>
<td>commercial at</td>
<td>SM050000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xC1</td>
<td>0x41</td>
<td>latin capital letter A</td>
<td>LA020000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xC2</td>
<td>0x42</td>
<td>latin capital letter B</td>
<td>LB020000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xC3</td>
<td>0x43</td>
<td>latin capital letter C</td>
<td>LC020000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2.3 Using the genxlt utility to create a translate table

The genxlt utility reads a source translation file from input file, writes the compiled version to output file, and then generates the translation load module. The source translation file provides the conversion specification from fromCodeSet to toCodeSet.

The source translation file contains directives that are acted upon by the genxlt utility to produce the compiled version of the translation table. The genxlt utility creates the translate table EDCUaabb, where aa is the fromCodeSet and bb is the toCodeSet, as defined in the EDCUCSNM macro.

Note: To generate your own conversions, you must modify the codeset name table EDCUCSNM.

The mapping between CodeSet and the two-letter CC code is defined in the CC conversion table EDCUCSNM. This table is built with assembler macros as follows:

```
EDCUCSNM TITLE 'CODE SET NAME CONVERSION TABLE'
EDCUCSNM CSECT
  EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-037',CODE='EA'
  EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-273',CODE='EB'
  EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-274',CODE='EC'
  EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-277',CODE='ED'
  EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-278',CODE='EE'
  .
  .
  EDCCSNAM TYPE=END
END   EDCUCSNM
```

The prefix of the name is EDCU for non-XPLINK converters, because Infoprint Server is not XPLINK-enabled. These tables must be put into the Language Environment runtime library, or can be pointed to by a STEPLIB. Figure 7-2 on page 142 shows the JCL to use genxlt utility.
7.2.4 Updating the codeset name table

To generate a conversion table, you must modify the codeset name table EDCUCSNM. This table contains entries that relate code pages to 2-character identifiers which are used to locate the member in the Language Environment run-time library. A sample EDCUCSNM table, CEE.CEESAMP(EDCUCSNM), contains table source for IBM provided code sets. Add yours here to preserve IBM-supplied values. The table is built with assembler macros. as shown in Figure 7-3.

```assembler
// JOB
//LIB JCLLIB ORDER=CEE.SCEEPROC
//GNXLT EXEC PROC=EDCGNXLT,
//   INFILE='KGOE.JOB.CP(CP)',
//   OUTFILE='CEE.SCEERUN(EDCUEY01)',
//   LIBPRFX='CEE',
//   OPT='NODBCS'

Figure 7-2  JCL to use the genxlt utility
```

```assembler
// JOB
//CL EXEC PROC=ASMACL
//C.SYSLIB DD DISP-SHR,DSN=CEE.SCEEMAC
//L.SYSLMOD DD DISP=SHR,DSN=KGOE.CP(EDCUCSNM)
//C.SYSIN DD *
EDCUCSNM TITLE 'CODE SET NAME CONVERSION TABLE'
EDCUCSNM CSECT
EDCUCSNM AMODE ANY
EDCUCSNM RMODE ANY
EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-4946',CODE='AA'
EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-850',CODE='AA'
EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='IBM-301',CODE='AB'
.
.
****************************************************************
* U2 is a special case for UCS-2 codeset
****************************************************************
EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='UCS-2',CODE='U2'
****************************************************************
* This section reserved for customer defined codesets
* which must follow the form '0x' thru '9x' where x is
* any alphanumeric character (0-9, A-Z)
****************************************************************
EDCCSNAM TYPE=ENTRY,CODESET='UPPERCASE',CODE='01'
EDCCSNAM TYPE=END
END

Figure 7-3  Sample job to generate a conversion table
```
7.2.5 Using indirect or direct conversion

z/OS iconv supports use of UCS-2 as an intermediate code set for conversion of characters encoded in one code set to another. The _ICONV_UCS2 environment variable instructs iconv_open("Y", "X") whether or not to set up indirect conversion from code set X to code set Y using UCS-2 as an intermediate code set.

The default behavior for iconv prior to z/OS 1.9 is to try to perform a direct conversion for any code set pair if a direct conversion table is available for that code set pair. If a direct conversion table is not available for that code set pair, then an indirect conversion is performed instead, using UCS-2 as an intermediate code set.

Important: In z/OS 1.9, if _ICONV_MODE is not set to C, iconv() will go directly to Unicode Services to perform character conversions without looking for any Language Environment-style user-created tables. Note that _ICONV_UCS2 will not be honored while using Unicode Services.

z/OS iconv recognizes the following values for _ICONV_UCS2:

1. Set up indirect conversion using UCS-2 first. The indirect conversions will use direct Unicode converters, if available. If not available, iconv_open() will fopen/fread uconvTable binaries. If the setup of indirect conversion fails, iconv_open() will try to set up direct conversion.

2. Set up direct conversion first. If this fails, try to set up indirect conversion using UCS-2. The indirect conversions will use direct unicode converters if available. If not available, iconv_open() will fopen/fread uconvTable binaries. This is the default.

3. Set up direct conversion first. If this fails, try to set up indirect conversion using UCS-2. The indirect conversions will use direct unicode converters. If direct unicode converters are unavailable, the iconv_open() request fails.

N. Never set up indirect conversion using UCS-2. If a direct converter cannot be found, the iconv_open() request fails.

D. Never set up indirect conversion using UCS-2. If a direct converter cannot be found, the iconv_open() request fails.

O. Only set up indirect conversion using UCS-2. iconv_open() will fopen/fread uconvTable binaries. Direct unicode converters will not be used. If required uconvTable binaries cannot be found, the iconv_open() request fails.

U. Only set up indirect conversion using UCS-2. The indirect conversions will use direct unicode converters, if available. If not available, iconv_open() will fopen/fread uconvTable binaries.

UCS-2 converters reside in a data set named prefix.SCEEUTBL, where the prefix for these data sets defaults to CEE. If an installation uses a prefix different from CEE for these data sets, it also must use the environment variable _ICONV_UCS2_PREFIX to specify the value of the prefix before using iconv_open() to set up UCS-2 converters.

The uconvTable binaries are also installed in the HFS directory named /usr/lib/nls/locale/uconvTable. The iconv_open() function searches for uconvTable binaries in the HFS before looking in the z/OS UCS-2 data set. You can use the LOCPATH environment variable to give iconv_open() a colon-separated list of path name prefixes to use instead of /usr/lib/nls/locale/ to find uconvTable directories in your HFS.
7.2.6 Modifying an existing conversion table

You can modify existing code set pairs, or add new ones. For example, the uconvdef utility reads an input source file and produces uconvTable binary files required by uconv_open(). The input source file defines a mapping between UCS-2 and user-created code sets. Source may be found in a HFS directory named /usr/lib/nls/locale/ucmap/.

uconvdef [-f SrcFile] [-v] uconvTable

You can use of the LOCPATH environment variable to separate your own built translate tables from the standard ones, because the directory is replaced with each upgrade of the operating system / root HFS.

Important: In order for Infoprint Server to see a modified LOCPATH value, it must be set in the aopstart exec.

7.3 Unicode Services

Starting in z/OS V1R7, the Unicode environment can be dynamically updated. Callers can invoke Unicode Services and the tables required for respective service will be loaded as they are referenced. Unicode Services allows you to add up to ten different defined conversion tables for conversions between the same pair of CCSIDs by using reserved numeric (0-9) techniques.

You can also define new CCSIDs for your own purposes. Keep in mind that these CCSIDs must not conflict with the predefined CCSIDs shipped with z/OS support for Unicode.

Note: Beginning with z/OS 1.9, the iconv() family of functions was modified to utilize Unicode Services Conversion Services under the covers. Therefore, it is advisable to migrate user-created tables from Language Environment to Unicode Services.

For an interim period, you can set _ICONV_MODE to C to continue to use Language Environment-style user tables.

Each conversion table is identified by its member name in the form CUNtaabb, where:

- t is the technique character.
- aa is the suffix from the knowledge base entry representing the defined From-CCSID.
- bb is the suffix from the knowledge base entry representing the defined To-CCSID.

Conversion tables that were not yet loaded are only searched in data set SYS1.SCUNTBL. Therefore, this name needs to be used. If an installation uses a different data set name, it may use the following alias entry in the catalog:

```
DEFINE ALIAS (NAME(SYS1.SCUNTBL) -
   SYMBOLICRELATE('SYS1.&PLEX..&OSLEVEL..SCUNTBL')) -
   CATALOG(CATALOG.MCAT)
```

First, Unicode Services searches for a direct conversion table for the requested character conversion it will use. If a direct conversion table is not found, it will do an indirect conversion instead, using UCS-2 as an intermediate code set.
Note that the CCSID of the most recent UCS-2 version is substituted and all technique-characters are tested. Then the second recent UCS-2 version is substituted and so on. The supported UCS-2 CCSIDs are:

- 21680 (Unicode 4.0)
- 17584 (Unicode 3.0)
- 13488 (Unicode 2.0)

### 7.3.1 Defining a CCSID in the knowledge base

IBM supplies a knowledge base module, CUNMIKBS, which describes all CCSIDs shipped with z/OS support for Unicode. User-defined CCSIDs can be added to this knowledge base using the assembler macro CUNAIKBG, which is supplied in SYS1.MACLIB.

```
// JOB
//LIB JCLLIB ORDER=ASM.SASMSAM1
//CL EXEC PROC=ASMACL,
//CSYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//CSYSLIB DD DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//SYSLIN DD DSN=&OBJ(USERKBS),SPACE=(3040,(40,40,5),,,ROUND),
//       DISP=(MOD,PASS),UNIT=VIO,
//       DCB=(BLKSIZE=3040,LRECL=80,RECFM=FB,BUFNO=1)
//CSYSIN DD *
USERKBS CSECT
USERKBS AMODE 31
USERKBS RMODE ANY
CP CUNAIKBG CCSID=59999,
   ES=1100,
   SUFFIX=XX,
   CCDEF=(1,1,1,1,1,1),
   STRINGT=1,
   CP=59999
END USERKBS
/*
//L.LINKLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.LINKLIB
//L.SYSLMOD DD DISP=SHR,DSN=CPAC.LINKLIB
//L.SYSLIB DD DSN=&OBJ,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
//L.SYSLIN DD *
ORDER CUNMIKBS
ORDER USERKBS
ORDER CUNMIEOF
MODE AMODE(31),RMODE(ANY)
INCLUDE LINKLIB(CUNMIKBS)
INCLUDE SYSLIB(USERKBS)
ENTRY CUNMIKBS
NAME CUNMIKBS(R)
*/
```

Figure 7-4  Job to define a CCSID in the knowledge base

For more information, refer to Character Data Representation Architecture Reference and Registry, SC09-2190, and z/OS Support for Unicode: Using Unicode Services, SA22-7649.
7.3.2 Converting a character map to binary format

To convert a character map to binary format, start by using an existing conversion table and create a character map out of it. Then make changes to the map. Finally, convert it back to binary format. Or, you can type in the complete character map with the editor of your choice and then convert it into binary format.

```
// JOB
//XLTSTEP EXEC PGM=CUNMITG1,PARM='00273,17584,L'
//TABIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.SCUNTBL
//CHAROUT DD DISP=SHR,DSN=KGOE.JOB.UNICODE(MAP0)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
```

*Figure 7-5 Job to build a human-readable character map*

Specify PARM='From-CCSID,To-CCSID,technique' on the EXEC card where From-CCSID is the source CCSID of the conversion and To-CCSID is the target CCSID of the conversion. Technique is one specific technique character.

```
// JOB
//XLTSTEP EXEC PGM=CUNMITG2,PARM='00273,17584,L'
//CHARIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=KGOE.JOB.UNICODE(MAP0)
//TABOUT DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.SCUNTBL
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
```

*Figure 7-6 Job to convert a character map into binary format*

7.4 Old-style-translation

IP PrintWay basic mode can also use a standard TCP/IP translate table to convert data from one code page into another. In that case, use the CONVXLAT utility to generate an MVS data set containing the binary translation table you require.

However, when the printer definition specifies a code page in either the document-codepage or printer-codepage attribute, then IP PrintWay uses the iconv utility and the specified code pages to convert data.

*Note: IP Printway extended mode uses iconv only.*

7.5 Sample conversion table for IBM-1047 to PC-8 (IBM-437)

In this section we provide a sample conversion table for IBM-1047 to PC-8 (IBM-437). Note that lines where the initial nonwhite space character is the pound (#) sign are treated as comments. Source for the code set converter is shipped in the CEE.SCEEGXLT data set.

```
#***********************************************************************
#* GENXLT file for IBM-1047 to IBM-437 (PC-8)                          *
#* This codeset is to show what a conversion table looks like.        *
#* It maps all code points from IBM-1047 to IBM-437.                 *
#* All it does is to fold lower case character into an upper         *
```

146 IBM Infoprint Server for z/OS Implementation Planning
#* case letter. *
#* Please check the symbol set installed and used by the printer. *
#* All characters which cannot be converted are treated as undefined and are replaced by a smiling face. *

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IBM-1047</th>
<th>IBM-437</th>
<th>comment</th>
<th>global ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>NUL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>SOH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>STX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>ETX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>0x09</td>
<td>horizontal-tab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x07</td>
<td>0x1c</td>
<td>IS4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x09</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0a</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0b</td>
<td>0x0b</td>
<td>vertical-tab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0c</td>
<td>0x0c</td>
<td>form-feed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0d</td>
<td>0x0d</td>
<td>carriage-return</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0e</td>
<td>0x0e</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0f</td>
<td>0x0f</td>
<td>SI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>DLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x11</td>
<td>0x11</td>
<td>DC1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x12</td>
<td>0x12</td>
<td>DC2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x13</td>
<td>0x13</td>
<td>DC3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x14</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x15</td>
<td>0x0a</td>
<td>newline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x16</td>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>backspace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x17</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x18</td>
<td>0x18</td>
<td>CAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x19</td>
<td>0x19</td>
<td>EM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1a</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1b</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1c</td>
<td>0x1c</td>
<td>file separator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1d</td>
<td>0x1d</td>
<td>group separator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1e</td>
<td>0x1e</td>
<td>record separator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1f</td>
<td>0x1f</td>
<td>unit separator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x20</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x21</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x22</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x23</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x24</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x25</td>
<td>0x0a</td>
<td>LF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x26</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x27</td>
<td>0x1b</td>
<td>ESC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x28</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x29</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2a</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2b</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2c</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ENQ
ACK
alert
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
SYN
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
EOT
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
EOT
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
DC4
NAK
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
space
RSP
a-circumflex
a-diaeresis
a-grave
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
a-ring
c-cedilla
n-tilde
cent sign
not defined in IBM-437
period
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
not defined in IBM-437
c-acute
c-circumflex
c-diaeresis
c-grave
s-sharp
exclamation-mark
dollar-sign
asterisk
right-parenthesis
semicolon
circumflex
hyphen
slash
not defined in IBM-437
A-diaeresis
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Code Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x64</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x65</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x66</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x67</td>
<td>0x8f</td>
<td>A-ring</td>
<td>&lt;LA280000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x68</td>
<td>0x80</td>
<td>C-cedilla</td>
<td>&lt;LC420000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x69</td>
<td>0xa5</td>
<td>N-tilde</td>
<td>&lt;LN200000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6a</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6b</td>
<td>0x2c</td>
<td>comma</td>
<td>&lt;SP080000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6c</td>
<td>0x25</td>
<td>percent-sign</td>
<td>&lt;SM020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6d</td>
<td>0x5f</td>
<td>underscore</td>
<td>&lt;SP090000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6e</td>
<td>0x3e</td>
<td>greater-than-sign</td>
<td>&lt;SA050000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6f</td>
<td>0x3f</td>
<td>question-mark</td>
<td>&lt;SP150000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x70</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x71</td>
<td>0x90</td>
<td>E-acute</td>
<td>&lt;LE120000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x72</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x73</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x74</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x75</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x76</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x77</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x78</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x79</td>
<td>0x60</td>
<td>grave-accent</td>
<td>&lt;SD130000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7a</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td>colon</td>
<td>&lt;SP130000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7b</td>
<td>0x23</td>
<td>number-sign</td>
<td>&lt;SM010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7c</td>
<td>0x40</td>
<td>commercial-at</td>
<td>&lt;SM050000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7d</td>
<td>0x27</td>
<td>apostrophe</td>
<td>&lt;SP050000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7e</td>
<td>0x3d</td>
<td>equals-sign</td>
<td>&lt;SA040000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7f</td>
<td>0x22</td>
<td>quotation-mark</td>
<td>&lt;SP040000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x80</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x81</td>
<td>0x41</td>
<td>a translated to A</td>
<td>&lt;LA010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x82</td>
<td>0x42</td>
<td>b translated to B</td>
<td>&lt;LB010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x83</td>
<td>0x43</td>
<td>c translated to C</td>
<td>&lt;LC010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x84</td>
<td>0x44</td>
<td>d translated to D</td>
<td>&lt;LD010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x85</td>
<td>0x45</td>
<td>e translated to E</td>
<td>&lt;LE010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x86</td>
<td>0x46</td>
<td>f translated to F</td>
<td>&lt;LF010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x87</td>
<td>0x47</td>
<td>g translated to G</td>
<td>&lt;LG010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x88</td>
<td>0x48</td>
<td>h translated to H</td>
<td>&lt;LH010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x89</td>
<td>0x49</td>
<td>i translated to I</td>
<td>&lt;LI010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8a</td>
<td>0xae</td>
<td>left-angle-quotes</td>
<td>&lt;SP170000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8b</td>
<td>0xaf</td>
<td>right-angle-quotes</td>
<td>&lt;SP180000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8c</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8d</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8e</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8f</td>
<td>0xf1</td>
<td>plus-minus</td>
<td>&lt;SA020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x90</td>
<td>0xf8</td>
<td>degree</td>
<td>&lt;SM190000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x91</td>
<td>0x4a</td>
<td>j translated to J</td>
<td>&lt;LJ010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x92</td>
<td>0x4b</td>
<td>k translated to K</td>
<td>&lt;LK010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x93</td>
<td>0x4c</td>
<td>l translated to L</td>
<td>&lt;LL010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x94</td>
<td>0x4d</td>
<td>m translated to M</td>
<td>&lt;LM010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x95</td>
<td>0x4e</td>
<td>n translated to N</td>
<td>&lt;LN010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x96</td>
<td>0x4f</td>
<td>o translated to O</td>
<td>&lt;LO010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x97</td>
<td>0x50</td>
<td>p translated to P</td>
<td>&lt;LP010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x98</td>
<td>0x51</td>
<td>q translated to Q</td>
<td>&lt;LQ010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x99</td>
<td>0x52</td>
<td>r translated to R</td>
<td>&lt;LR010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x9a</td>
<td>0xa6</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>&lt;SM210000&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 7. Code page translation 149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hex Value</th>
<th>Decimal Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0xd2</td>
<td>0x4b</td>
<td>capital letter K</td>
<td>&lt;LK020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd3</td>
<td>0x4c</td>
<td>capital letter L</td>
<td>&lt;LL020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd4</td>
<td>0x4d</td>
<td>capital letter M</td>
<td>&lt;LM020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd5</td>
<td>0x4e</td>
<td>capital letter N</td>
<td>&lt;LN020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd6</td>
<td>0x4f</td>
<td>capital letter O</td>
<td>&lt;LO020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd7</td>
<td>0x50</td>
<td>capital letter P</td>
<td>&lt;LP020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd8</td>
<td>0x51</td>
<td>capital letter Q</td>
<td>&lt;LQ020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xda</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xdb</td>
<td>0x96</td>
<td>u-circumflex</td>
<td>&lt;LU150000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xdc</td>
<td>0x81</td>
<td>u-diaeresis</td>
<td>&lt;LU170000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xdd</td>
<td>0x97</td>
<td>u-grave</td>
<td>&lt;LU130000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xde</td>
<td>0xa3</td>
<td>u-acute</td>
<td>&lt;LU110000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xdf</td>
<td>0x98</td>
<td>y-diaeresis</td>
<td>&lt;LY170000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe0</td>
<td>0x5c</td>
<td>backslash</td>
<td>&lt;SM070000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe1</td>
<td>0xf6</td>
<td>divide</td>
<td>&lt;SA060000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe2</td>
<td>0x53</td>
<td>capital letter S</td>
<td>&lt;LS020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe3</td>
<td>0x54</td>
<td>capital letter T</td>
<td>&lt;LT020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe4</td>
<td>0x55</td>
<td>capital letter U</td>
<td>&lt;LU020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe5</td>
<td>0x56</td>
<td>capital letter V</td>
<td>&lt;LV020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe6</td>
<td>0x57</td>
<td>capital letter W</td>
<td>&lt;LW020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe7</td>
<td>0x58</td>
<td>capital letter X</td>
<td>&lt;LX020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe8</td>
<td>0x59</td>
<td>capital letter Y</td>
<td>&lt;LY020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe9</td>
<td>0x5a</td>
<td>capital letter Z</td>
<td>&lt;LZ020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xea</td>
<td>0xfd</td>
<td>two-superior</td>
<td>&lt;ND021000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xeb</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xec</td>
<td>0x99</td>
<td>O-diaeresis</td>
<td>&lt;LO180000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xed</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xee</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xef</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf0</td>
<td>0x30</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>&lt;ND100000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf1</td>
<td>0x31</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>&lt;ND010000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf2</td>
<td>0x32</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>&lt;ND020000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf3</td>
<td>0x33</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>&lt;ND030000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf4</td>
<td>0x34</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>&lt;ND040000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf5</td>
<td>0x35</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>&lt;ND050000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf6</td>
<td>0x36</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>&lt;ND060000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf7</td>
<td>0x37</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>&lt;ND070000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf8</td>
<td>0x38</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>&lt;ND080000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf9</td>
<td>0x39</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>&lt;ND090000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xfa</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xfb</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xfc</td>
<td>0x9a</td>
<td>U-diaeresis</td>
<td>&lt;LU180000&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xfd</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xfe</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xff</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>not defined in IBM-437</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sample IP Printway user exit

This appendix provides a sample begin data set exit that can be used to add a PCL setup string in front of each data set. Depending on the LRECL, you may choose another font or another page layout.
A.1 Instructions for downloading the sample programs

In the download instructions, do the following:

- myuser in these instructions is your user ID. So replace your user ID where you see myuser. Also, my.email@xx.com is your e-mail address.
- Retrieve the files sample.programs.unload.bin in binary to your workstation or directly into your z/OS system from this IBM Redbooks Web site.
  This can be done using your favorite browser (not shown here) or an ftp session.
- Following are samples of how to do this with ftp sessions.

Scenario 1: Getting the data directly to your z/OS system

ftp www.redbooks.ibm.com
User: anonymous
Password: my.email@xx.com
cd redbooks/SG247458/
lcd 'myuser'
locsite blk=3120 lrecl=80 recfm=fb
binary
get sg247458.clist.unload.bin sg247458.clist.unload
quit

Note: You may also decide to pre-allocate the unloaded files as XMIT-ed sequential files instead of using the LOCSITE setting.

Figure A-1 Scenario 1 - download directly to your z/OS system

Scenario 2: Getting the files to your workstation first

ftp www.redbooks.ibm.com
User: anonymous
Password: my.email@xx.com
cd redbooks/SG247458/
binary
get sg247458.clist.unload.bin
quit

The following example shows how to transfer the files to z/OS from your workstation afterwards.

ftp my.zos.system
User: myuser
Password: mypasswd
cd 'myuser'
binary
quote site blk=3120 lrecl=80 recfm=fb
put sg247458.clist.unload.bin sg247458.clist.unload
quit

Figure A-2 Scenario 2 - download to your workstation
A.2 Sample IP PrintWay begin data set exit

This exit can be used to add a PCL setup string at the beginning of each output data set.

Example: A-1 Sample exit

ANFUXBDS TITLE 'Begin Dataset Exit'
*
****** START OF SPECIFICATIONS *********************************************
* * * *  MODULE NAME = ANFUXBDS *
* * DESCRIBE NAME = Begin dataset Exit which adds PCL Setup strings *
* * at the beginning of each Output depending on the *
* * max. record length *
* *
* FUNCTION = *
* * checks max. record length and adds corresponding setup PCL *
* *
* *
* MODULE TYPE = PROCEDURE *
* PROCESSOR = Assembler *
* ATTRIBUTES = *
* REENTRANT *
* AMODE(31) *
* RMODE(ANY) *
* *
* PATCH LABEL = none *
* *
* ENTRY POINT = *
* * ANFUXBDS *
* *
Final installation steps

Afterwards run the following command on your z/OS system:

tso receive indsn('myuser.sg247458.clist.unload')

On display of the following messages you may request to restore the original PDS data set with a desired new data set name (You may also decide to rename the data set after completion of the receive command.):

INMR901I Dataset ROGERS.SG247458.CLIST from ROGERS on WTSCPLX4
INMR906A Enter restore parameters or 'DELETE' or 'END' +

Here is a sample to set the data set name.

dsn('myuser.sg247458.clist')
tso receive indsn(sg247458.clist.unload)
Dataset ROGERS.SG247458.CLIST from ROGERS on WTSCPLX4
Enter restore parameters or 'DELETE' or 'END' +
[enter]
* LINKAGE =                                                        *
* LOAD ANFUXBDS                                                        *
* CALL ANFUXBDS(addr(ANFUEXTP))                                                        *
* calling module passes address of Common Parameter area.                                                        *
* * CHANGE ACTIVITY =                                                        *
* 04/01/12 Initial Version                                                        *
* * **** END OF SPECIFICATIONS ******************************************************
* ANFUXBDS CSECT , Establish the csect
ANFUXBDS AMODE ANY It addresses all storage
ANFUXBDS RMODE ANY It can reside anywhere
USING ANFUXBDS,R15 Establish temporary addressability X to module
B INIT Branch around copyright information
ANFUXBDS MODID BR=NO EYECATCHER INFO
DC C'THIS USER EXIT HAD BEEN DEVELOPED AS IS BY'
DC C'KLAUS GOETZE IN ORDER TO SUPPORT DYNAMIC '
DC C'PCL SETUP INFORMATION DEPENDING ON THE MAX'
DC C'RECORD LENGTH'

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
*          ANFUXBDS Module entry point                                    *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*

* INIT     DS    0H
STM   R14,R12,12(R13)     Save callers registers
LR    R12,R15             Move base register to R12
DROP  R15                 Done with this register
USING ANFUXBDS,R12 R12 is base reg for program code
L     R2,0(R1)            get the parm pointer
USING ANFUEXTP,R2 R2 is base for parm area
ST    R13,XTPSAVE+4       chain save areas
LA    R15,XTPSAVE         get my save area
ST    R15,8(R13)          point callers save area to it
LR    R13,R15             point R13 to my save area

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
*   Initialisation complete, ready for work                             *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* The only thing we have to do is look at the maximum record length *
* and select one of five possible cases :
* recod length < 81  ->>>  setup string 1   HS081066  -> ESC1
* recod length < 121 ->>>  setup string 2   HS120088  -> ESC2
* recod length < 133 ->>>  setup string 3   L4S13266  -> ESC3
* recod length < 151 ->>>  setup string 4   L4S15066  -> ESC4
* recod length > 150 ->>>  setup string 5   L4D20080  -> ESC5

***********************************************************************
* LOGIC - look at XTPMRECL and if necessary consider 1 byte CC         *
* as defined by JFCRECFM                                              *
* Attention - for variable length record note that the 4 byte length *
* prefix does not belong to max. record length reported.              *
* JFCRECFM BITSTRING 1 JFCRECFM - RECORD FORMAT (DCB=RECFM=) *
* (AMP=('RECFM=')) *
* 111. .... JFCRECFM "X'E0'" - RECORD FORMAT *
* (USASI/USASCII) *
* 111. .... JFCFMREC "X'C0'" - HIGH-ORDER TWO BITS *
* OF JFCRECFM TO BE *
* TESTED FOR RECORD *
* FORMAT *
* 111. .... JFCUND "X'C0'" - U UNDEFINED *
* 1... .... JFCFIX "X'80'" - F FIXED *
* .1. .... JFCVAR "X'40'" - V VARIABLE *
* ..1. .... JFCVAR "X'20'" - D VARIABLE (FORMAT D *
* FOR USASI/USASCII) *
* ..1. .... JFCRFO "X'20'" - T - TRACK OVERFLOW *
* ...1 .... JFCRFB "X'10'" - B - BLOCKED *
* - MAY NOT OCCUR *
* WITH UNDEFINED *
* .... 1... JFCRFS "X'08'" - S - FOR FIXED LENGTH *
* RECORD FORMAT, *
* STANDARD BLOCKS NO TRUCATED *
* BLOCKS OR UNFILLED TRACKS ARE *
* EMBEDDED IN THE DATA SET. FOR *
* VARIABLE LENGTH RECORD FORMAT,* *
* SPANDED RECORDS. *
* .... .11. JFCCCHAR "X'06'" - CONTROL CHARACTER *
* .... .11. JFCASA "X'04'" - A AMERICAN NATIONAL *
* CONTROL CHARACTER *
* (IOS/ANSI) *
* .... ..1. JFCMAC "X'02'" - M MACHINE CODE CONTOL*
* CHARACTER *
* .... .... JFCNOCC "X'00'" - NO CONTROL CHARACTER *
* *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* START DS OH
LH R5,XTPMRECL
TM XTPDSFLG,XTPDSCC       are there Control Character
BZ ADD1
S R5,=F'1'               if yes, LRECL = 1 Byte CC
*
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* * The max. LRECL is stored into R5 *
* *
* IF R5 <  81 then ESC1 ( max. LRECL <  81   ) *
* IF R5 < 120 then ESC2 ( max. LRECL =  81 - 120 ) *
* IF R5 < 132 then ESC3 ( max. LRECL = 121 - 132 ) *
* IF R5 < 150 then ESC4 ( max. LRECL = 133 - 150 ) *
* else ESC5 ( max. LRECL > 150   ) *
* *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* ADD1 CL R5,=F'80'      LRECL < 80
BP ADD2 No
LA R3,ESCC1 get the predefined ESC string
LA R4,LESC1 get the length of the string
B  PUT get out
ADD2 CL R5,=F'120'      LRECL = 81 - 120
BP ADD3 No
LA R3,ESC2  get the predefined ESC string
LA R4,LESC2 get the length of the string
B PUT Get out

ADD3 CL R5,=F'132'   LRECL = 121 - 132
BP  ADD4 No
LA R3,ESC3  get the predefined ESC string
LA R4,LESC3 get the length of the string
B PUT Get out

ADD4 CL R5,=F'150'   LRECL < 133 - 150
BP  ADD5 No
LA R3,ESC4  get the predefined ESC string
LA R4,LESC4 get the length of the string
B PUT Get out

* LRECL > 150
ADD5 LA R3,ESC5  get the predefined ESC string
LA R4,LESC5 get the length of the string

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* Return to caller                                                  *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*

DS 0H
PUT ST R3,XTPERPTR store the address
ST R4,XTPERLEN store the length
MVI XTPRCFLG,0 zero flag
OI XTPRCFLG,XTPRLAST don't call me again
OI XTPRCFLG,XTPRCEXT print the record
L R13,XTPSAVE+4 address of caller's save area
LM R14,R12,12(R13) Restore caller's registers
BR R14 Return to MVS

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* Pre-defined setup strings                                          *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*

* FORMAT 'ESC-1'

* ALLOW FOR LRECL < 81 COLUMNS BY 66 LINES PER PAGE
* PLACED ON PAGE SO PAPER MAY BE 3-HOLE PUNCHED DOWN LEFT SIDE
* FONT IS COURIER

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* LRECL < 81
ESCI DC X'1B45' RESET
* DC X'45534331' ID for ESCI
DC X'1B266C323641' PAPER SIZE A4
DC X'1B266C3053' SELECT SIMPLEX PRINT-VERT BIND
DC X'1B266C31383055' LEFT OFFSET=180 DECIPOINTS

* DC X'1B266C3548' PAPER SOURCE=FACH 3 ?
DC X'1B266C304F' PORTRAIT
DC X'1B28313255' PC850 SYMBOL SET
DC X'1B28733050' PRI SPACING IS FIXED
DC X'1B2873313248' PRI PITCH IS 12
DC X'1B2873313056' PRI POINT SIZE IS 10
DC X'1B28733053' PRI STYLE IS UPRIGHT
DC X'1B28733042' PRI STROKE WEIGHT IS NORMAL
DC X'1B28733430393594' PRI TYPEFACE IS COURIER
DC X'1B266831302E3348' HMI = 10,3
DC X'1B266C372E383043' VMI = 7,80
DC X'1B266C3245' TOP MARGIN IS 2
DC X'1B2661324C' LEFT MARGIN IS 2
Appendix A. Sample IP Printway user exit

* DC X'18266C363746' TEXT LENGTH = 66 LINES
DC X'18266C314C' ENABLE PERF SKIP
DC X'1826733043' ENABLE END-OF-LINE WRAP
DC X'1826613052' VERT CUR POS = ROW 0
LESC1 EQU **-ESC1 LENGTH OF ESC1

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* FORMAT 'ESC-2' *
* * * *
* ALLOW FOR LRECL < 121 COLUMNS BY 66 LINES PER PAGE *
* PLACED ON PAGE SO PAPER MAY BE 3-HOLE PUNCHED *
* OFFSETTING IS USED BECAUSE OF THE DUPLEXING *
* * *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* LRECL 81 - 120
ESC2 DC X'1845' RESET
* DC X'48534332' ID for ESC2
DC X'18266C3153' SELECT DUPLEX PRINT- VERT BIND
DC X'18266C31383055' LEFT OFFSET=180 DECIPOINTS
DC X'18266C3548' FEED FROM PAPER DECK
DC X'18266C304F' PORTRAIT
DC X'1828313255' PC850 SYMBOL SET
DC X'1828733050' PRI SPACING IS FIXED
DC X'18287331352E3548' PRI PITCH IS 15.5
DC X'1828733056' PRI POINT SIZE IS 10
DC X'1828733053' PRI STYLE IS UPRIGHT
DC X'1828733042' PRI STROKE WEIGHT IS NORMAL
DC X'1828733430393954' PRI TYPEFACE IS COURIER
DC X'182668372E3248' HMI = 7,4 -> 7,4/120*120 120
DC X'18266C362E303043' VMI = 6,00 -> 11/088*48 088
DC X'18266C2B31383055' LEFT OFFSET=180 DECIPOINTS
DC X'18266C3144C' LEFT MARGIN IS 4
* DC X'18266C363746' TEXT LENGTH = 66 LINES
DC X'18266C314C' ENABLE PERF SKIP
DC X'1826733043' ENABLE END-OF-LINE WRAP
DC X'1826613052' VERT CUR POS = ROW 0
LESC2 EQU **-ESC2 LENGTH OF ESC2

*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* FORMAT 'ESC-3' *
* * * *
* ALLOW FOR LRECL < 133 COLUMNS BY 66 LINES PER PAGE *
* PLACED ON PAGE SO PAPER MAY BE 3-HOLE PUNCHED *
* OFFSETTING IS USED BECAUSE OF THE DUPLEXING *
* * *
*---------------------------------------------------------------------*
* LRECL 121 - 132
ESC3 DC X'1845' RESET
* DC X'48534333' ID for ESC3
DC X'18266C3053' SIMPLEX
DC X'18266C2B31383055' LEFT OFFSET=180 DECIPOINTS
DC X'18266C3548' FEED FROM PAPER DECK
DC X'18266C314F' LANDSCAPE
DC X'1828313255' PC850 SYMBOL SET
DC X'1828733050' PRI SPACING IS FIXED
DC X'182873313548' PRI PITCH IS 15
DC X'182873382E3556' PRI POINT SIZE IS 8.5
DC X'1828733053' PRI STYLE IS UPRIGHT
DC X'1828733042' PRI STROKE WEIGHT IS NORMAL
DC X'1828733430393954' PRI TYPEFACE IS COURIER
DC X'18266C352E3136333643' VMI = 5.1636
DC X'182668313048' HMI = 10
* FORMAT 'ESC-4' *
* ALLOW FOR LRECL < 151 COLUMNS BY 66 LINES PER PAGE *
* PLACED ON PAGE SO PAPER MAY BE 3-HOLE PUNCHED *
* OFFSETTING IS USED BECAUSE OF THE DUPLEXING *
* *
* LRECL 133 - 150 *
ESC4 DC X'1B45'  
  ID for ESC4
DC X'1B266C3053'  
  SIMPLEX
DC X'1B266C31383055'  
  LEFT OFFSET=180 DECIPOINTS
DC X'1B266C3548'  
  FEED FROM PAPER DECK
DC X'1B266C314F'  
  LANDSCAPE
DC X'1B28313255'  
  PC850 SYMBOL SET
DC X'1B28733050'  
  PRI SPACING IS FIXED
DC X'1B2873313548'  
  PRI PITCH IS 15
DC X'1B28733042'  
  PRI STYLE IS UPRIGHT
DC X'1B28733053'  
  PRI STROKE WEIGHT IS NORMAL
DC X'1B2873352E3136333643'  
  PRI TYPEFACE IS COURIER
DC X'1B266C352E3136333643'  
  VMI = 5.1636
DC X'1B266B382E3848'  
  HMI = 8.8
DC X'1B266C3445'  
  TOP MARGIN IS 4
DC X'1B2661324C'  
  LEFT MARGIN IS 2
* DC X'1B266C363746'  
  TEXT LENGTH = 66 LINES
DC X'1B266C314C'  
  ENABLE PERF SKIP
DC X'1B26633043'  
  ENABLE END-OF-LINE WRAP
DC X'1B26613052'  
  VERT CUR POS = ROW 0
LESC4 EQU **-ESC4  
  LENGTH OF ESC4
* FORMAT 'ESC-5' *
* ALLOW FOR LRECL > 150 COLUMNS BY 66 LINES PER PAGE *
* PLACED ON PAGE SO PAPER MAY BE 3-HOLE PUNCHED *
* OFFSETTING IS USED BECAUSE OF THE DUPLEXING *
* *
* LRECL > 150 *
ESC5 DC X'1B45'  
  ID for ESCS
DC X'1B266C3153'  
  SELECT DUPLEX PRINT- VERT BIND
DC X'1B266C31383055'  
  LEFT OFFSET=072 DECIPOINTS
DC X'1B266C3548'  
  FEED FROM PAPER DECK
DC X'1B266C314F'  
  LANDSCAPE
DC X'1B28313255'  
  PC850 SYMBOL SET
DC X'1B28733050'  
  PRI SPACING IS FIXED
DC X'1B2873313548'  
  PRI PITCH IS 15
DC X'1B28733382E3556'  
  PRI POINT SIZE IS 8.5
DC X'1B28733042'  
  PRI STYLE IS UPRIGHT
DC X'1B28733053'  
  PRI STROKE WEIGHT IS NORMAL
DC X'1B28733430393954'  
  PRI TYPEFACE IS COURIER
DC X'1B266C3445'  
  TOP MARGIN IS 4
DC X'1B2661324C'  
  LEFT MARGIN IS 2
* DC X'1B266C363746'  
  TEXT LENGTH = 66 LINES
DC X'1B266C314C'  
  ENABLE PERF SKIP
DC X'1B26633043'  
  ENABLE END-OF-LINE WRAP
DC X'1B26613052'  
  VERT CUR POS = ROW 0
LESC5 EQU **-ESC5  
  LENGTH OF ESC5
*
Appendix A. Sample IP Printway user exit

DC X'1B266B362E3648'       HMI = 6.6
DC X'1B266C3645'           TOP MARGIN IS 6
DC X'1B2661324C'           LEFT MARGIN IS 2
* DC X'1B266C363746'         TEXT LENGTH = 66 LINES
DC X'1B266C314C'           ENABLE PERF SKIP
DC X'1B26733043'           ENABLE END-OF-LINE WRAP
DC X'1B26613052'           VERT CUR POS = ROW 0
LESC5 EQU *-ESC5                  LENGTH OF ESC5

* PRINT ON
ANFUEXTP

* R0 EQU 0
R1 EQU 1
R2 EQU 2
R3 EQU 3
R4 EQU 4
R5 EQU 5
R6 EQU 6
R7 EQU 7
R8 EQU 8
R9 EQU 9
R10 EQU 10
R11 EQU 11
R12 EQU 12
R13 EQU 13
R14 EQU 14
R15 EQU 15
END ,                   End of ANFUXBDS module
Sample HTTP Server configuration file

This appendix includes a sample configuration file. The sample Web server configuration allows you to access Infoprint Server Central Web pages if you are a member of an AOPOPER or AOPADMIN group.

You can customize your Web server configuration by editing the file. For most configuration directives, your updates take effect when you restart the Web server.
B.1 Sample httpd.conf file

The recommended changes to the httpd.conf configuration file are located in /usr/lpp/Printsrv/samples, and the file name is httpd.conf.updates. Figure B-1 contains the file.

```sh
# Make the following changes to the httpd.conf file
# for Infoprint Central.
# The directives are listed in the order that they should appear
# in the httpd.conf file.

# Make sure you add the following PASS rules
# 1. Before the ServerInit directive
# 2. Before the generic rule, "Pass /*"
Pass /Infoprint/Scripts/*     /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/Scripts/*
Pass /Infoprint/Images/*      /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/Images/*
Pass /Infoprint/help/En_US/*  /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/help/En_US/*

# If you ordered the Japanese feature, uncomment the following lines:
# Make sure they are added before the ServerInit directive
#Pass /Infoprint/help/Ja_JP/*.htm /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/help/Ja_JP/*.htm.binary
#Pass /Infoprint/help/Ja_JP/*      /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/help/Ja_JP/*
#AddEncoding .binary     8bit    1.0     #
#AddType .html text/html     binary  1.0     # Ja_JP html
#AddType .htm  text/html     binary  1.0     # Ja_JP htm

# ServerInit directive:
ServerInit /usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib/aopcentral.so:initialize*

# Service directive:
Service /Infoprint*       /usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib/aopcentral.so:dllMain*

# Make sure the following AddType directives are added towards the end
# of the AddType directives section
AddType .js  application/x-javascript  ebc dic  1.0  # JavaScript
AddType .htc text/x-component      ebc dic  1.0  # .htc files
AddType .css text/css             ebc dic  1.0  # W3C cascading style sheets
```

Figure B-1  httpd.conf.updates file
Important: The sample file shown in Example B-1 contains the changes for Infoprint Central. The changes are shown in bold text.

Most of the comments and statements have been removed from the sample configuration file. The sample file contains only statements that you should update after.

When you update this file, in order to find the locations for the updates, follow these steps:

1. Issue `f ‘protection IMW_Admin’`
   - Add the Protection AOP_USER changes (or whatever you decide to use).
2. Issue `f ‘new pass rules here’`
   - Add the Infoprint Server PASS rules here.
3. Issue `f ‘UserId %%CLIENT%%’`
   - Add a user ID directive.
4. Issue `f ‘AddType’`
   - Add directives for Infoprint Central Web pages into that section.

Example: B-1 Sample httpd.conf

```
# COMPONENT_NAME: web httpd.conf
# (C) COPYRIGHT International Business Machines Corporation 1997
# All Rights Reserved
# This software is subject to the IBM Software Agreement
# Restricted Rights for U.S. government users, and applicable export
# regulations. IBM is a registered trademark and IBM HTTP Server
# is a trademark of IBM Corporation.
# ===================================================================== #
#        Sample configuration file for httpd, running as a normal
#        HTTP server.
#        TABLE OF CONTENTS
#        =================
#        - Basic directives
#        - Logging and Reporting directives
#          * log purge/archive directives
#          * access log filter directives
#          * example report templates
#        - Method directives
#        - Directories and Welcome page directives
#          * Directory browsing directives
#        - Error Message Customization
#        - Service directives
#          * HTImage directives
#          * HTCounter directives
#        - Mapping rules
#        - Performance directives.
#        - Timeout directives
#        - Security directives.
#        - Proxy directives
#        - Proxy caching directives
```
# File caching directives
# Work Load Management directives
# SNMP directives
# Icon directives
# Request Processing directives
# Basic directives

# All surrogate UserIds specified for use by the Web Server
# must be given as MVS Login names, not numeric UIDs. They must also
# be defined as BPX.SRV.xxxxx profiles in the SURROGATE CLASS and the
# Web Server must be permitted UACC(READ) to them.
# NOTE: The special UserId %%CLIENT%% may be used instead of a
# surrogate UserId. The MVS Web Server will require the client
to supply a valid local MVS UserId and password. The request
will be served under that UserId. The client's UserId does not
need to be defined under the surrogate class and the Web Server
does not need special permissions. (Under basic authentication
the client's password is transmitted encoded but not encrypted)
# NOTE: The special UserId %%CERTIF%% may be used instead of a
# surrogate UserId. The MVS Web Server, when presented with a
# SSL session with client certificate data present, will attempt
to map the client certificate to a local MVS UserId and password.
# (This requires underlying OS/390 and security product support.)
# If the session isn't SSL, or there isn't a certificate present,
# or the underlying support is not available, or the certificate
can't be mapped, then the request will be treated as if
# %%CLIENT%% had be specified. Note that SSLClientAuth must be On
# in order to get client certificate data.
# NOTE: The special UserId %%SERVER%% may be used instead of a
# surrogate UserId. The MVS Web Server will serve documents
# from its own MVS userid when this is specified. This should
# be used carefully, especially if running as superuser.
# Default: %%CLIENT%%
# Syntax: UserId <user name>

# Example:
# UserId PUBLIC
# UserId %%CLIENT%%
# UserId %%CERTIF%%
# UserId %%SERVER%%

# Infoprint Server UserId directive

UserId %%CLIENT%%

#===========================================================================
# User authentication and document protection
# Within the configuration file, there are three directives that
define file access protection:
# Protect, DefProt, and Protection.
# A Protection setup contains subdirectives that define how to a set
# of resources is to be protected. The protection setup is used on
# a DefProt or Protect directive. The subdirectives can be coded
# * on a preceding Protection directive
# * in-line on the DefProt or Protect directive
# * in a separate protection file
# Protection PROT-SETUP- USERS {
#   ServerId YourServersFancyName
Appendix B. Sample HTTP Server configuration file

Protection IMW_Admin {
    ServerId        WebServer_Administration
    AuthType        Basic
    PasswdFile      %SAF%
    GroupFile       %SAF%
    GET-Mask        user, user, group, group, user
}

#       The following rules will allow anyone who is a member of
#       AOPOPER or AOPADMIN to use InfoPrint Central application.
#
Protection AOP_USER {
    ServerId        InfoPrint_Server_Operation
    UserID          %CLIENT%
    AuthType        Basic
    GroupFile       %SAF%
    PasswdFile      %SAF%
    Mask            AOPOPER, AOPADMIN
}

Protect /Infoprint*     AOP_USER

# ======================================================================
#        REXX mapping rules
# ======================================================================
# Pass          /REXX/*                 /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/rexx/*
Exec /cgi-bin/*          /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/cgi-bin/*
Exec /admin-bin/*        /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/admin-bin/*
Exec /Docs/admin-bin/*   /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/admin-bin/*
#        URL translation rules; If your documents are under
#        /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/pub/ then this single rule does the job:
Pass /icons/*           /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/icons/*
Pass /Admin/*.jpg     /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/Admin/*.jpg
Pass /Admin/*.gif      /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/Admin/*.gif
Pass /Admin/*.html     /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/Admin/*.html
Pass /Docs/*           /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/Docs/*
Pass /reports/javelin/*  /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/pub/reports/javelin/*
Pass /reports/java/*  /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/pub/reports/java/*
Pass /reports/*        /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/pub/reports/*
Pass /img-bin/*        /usr/lpp/internet/server_root/img-bin/*
# *** ADD NEW PASS RULES HERE ***
#
# *   PASS RULES for InfoPrint Central  ( keep them together )
#***********************************************************************
Pass /Infoprint/Scripts/* /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/Scripts/*
Pass /Infoprint/Images/*  /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/Images/*
Pass /Infoprint/help/En_US/* /usr/lpp/Printsrv/InfoprintCentral/help/En_US/*
# ================
# Printsrv directives
# ================
# ServerInit directive added for InfoPrint Central
# ServerInit /usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib/aopcentral.so:initialize*
# Service directive added for InfoPrint Central
# Service /Infoprint* /usr/lpp/Printsrv/lib/aopcentral.so:dllMain*
# Request Processing directives
# SuffixCaseSense directive:
# Specify whether case sensitivity for suffixes is on or off.
# Default:  off
# Syntax:  SuffixCaseSense <on | off>
# NOTE: This directive should be BEFORE any AddType, AddEncoding or
# AddLanguage directives.
SuffixCaseSense  off
# AddType directive:
# Map suffixes to the content-type of a file.
# Defaults:  see list below
# Syntax:    Addtype <.suffix><representation><encoding><quality>
#          where <quality> is optional
AddType  .arm  application/x-x509-ca-cert ebcdic  1.0
AddType  .cer  application/x-x509-user-cert ebcdic  0.5
AddType  .crt  application/x-x509-ca-cert ebcdic  1.0
AddType  .der  application/x-x509-ca-cert binary  1.0  # CA Certificate
AddType  .mime /mime binary  1.0  # Internal - MIME
AddType  .bin  application/octet-stream binary  1.0  # Binary
AddType  .class application/octet-stream binary  1.0  # Java applet
AddType  .pdf  application/pdf binary  1.0
AddType  .ai   application/postscript ebcdic  0.5  # Adobe
AddType  .PS   application/postscript ebcdic  0.8  # PostScript
AddType  .eps  application/postscript ebcdic  0.8
AddType  .ps   application/postscript ebcdic  0.8
AddType  .rtf  application/x-rtf ebcdic  1.0  # RTF
AddType  .csh  application/x-csh ebcdic  0.5  # C-shell script
AddType  .dvi  application/x-dvi binary  1.0  # TeX DVI
AddType  .hdf  application/x-hdf binary  1.0  # NCSA HDF data
AddType  .latex application/x-latex ebcdic  1.0  # LaTeX source
AddType  .nc   application/x-netcdf binary  1.0  # Unidata netCDF
AddType  .cdf  application/x-cdf ebcdic  1.0
AddType  .sh   application/x-sh ebcdic  0.5  # Shell-script
AddType  .tcl  application/x-tcl ebcdic  0.5  # TCL-script
AddType  .tex  application/x-tex ebcdic  1.0  # TeX source
AddType  .texi application/x-texinfo ebcdic  1.0  # TeXinfo
AddType  .texinfo application/x-texinfo ebcdic  1.0
AddType  .t    application/x-troff ebcdic  0.5  # Troff
Appendix B. Sample HTTP Server configuration file

AddType .roff application/x-troff ebcdic 0.5
AddType .tr application/x-troff ebcdic 0.5
AddType .man application/x-troff-man ebcdic 0.5 # Troff with man
AddType .me application/x-troff-me ebcdic 0.5 # Troff with me
AddType .ms application/x-troff-ms ebcdic 0.5 # Troff with ms
#AddType .src application/x-wais-source ebcdic 1.0 # WAIS source
#AddType .bcpio application/x-bcpio binary 1.0 # Old binary CPIO
#AddType .cpio application/x-cpio binary 1.0 # POSIX CPIO
AddType .gtar application/x-gtar binary 1.0 # Gnu tar
AddType .shar application/x-shar ebcdic 1.0 # Shell archive
#AddType .sv4cpio application/x-sv4cpio binary 1.0 # SVR4 CPIO
#AddType .sv4crc application/x-sv4crc binary 1.0 # SVR4 CPIO
AddType .wrl x-world/x-vrml binary 1.0 # VRML
# The following are neutral CAE formats:
#AddType .igs application/iges binary 1.0 # IGES Graphics
#AddType .iges application/iges binary 1.0 # IGES Graphics
#AddType .IGS application/iges binary 1.0 # IGES Graphics
#AddType .IGES application/iges binary 1.0 # IGES Graphics
#AddType .stp application/STEP ebcdic 1.0 # ISO-10303 STEP
#AddType .STEP application/STEP ebcdic 1.0
#AddType .step application/STEP ebcdic 1.0
#AddType .STEP application/STEP ebcdic 1.0
AddType .dxr application/dxf binary 1.0 # DXF (AUTODESK)
AddType .DXF application/dxf binary 1.0
AddType .vda application/vda binary 1.0 # VDA-FS Surface
AddType .VDA application/vda binary 1.0
#AddType .set application/set ebcdic 1.0 # (French CAD)
#AddType .SET application/set ebcdic 1.0
#AddType .stl application/SLA ebcdic 1.0
#AddType .STL application/SLA ebcdic 1.0
# The following are vendor-specific CAD-formats commonly used at CERN and in HEP institutes:
#AddType .dwg application/acad binary 1.0 # Autocad drawing
#AddType .DWG application/acad binary 1.0
#AddType .SOL application/solids binary 1.0 # MATRA Prelude
#AddType .DRW application/drafting binary 1.0 # PreludeDrafting
#AddType .prt application/pro_eng binary 1.0 # Pro/ENGINEER
#AddType .PRT application/pro_eng binary 1.0
#AddType .unv application/i-deas binary 1.0 # SDRC I-DEAS
#AddType .UNV application/i-deas binary 1.0
#AddType .CCAD application/clariscad binary 1.0 # ClarisCAD files
AddType .snd audio/basic binary 1.0 # Audio
AddType .au audio/basic binary 1.0
AddType .aiff audio/x-aiff binary 1.0
AddType .aiffc audio/x-aiff binary 1.0
AddType .aif audio/x-aiff binary 1.0
AddType .wav audio/x-wav binary 1.0 # Windows+ WAVE
AddType .bmp image/bmp binary 1.0 # OS/2 bitmap
AddType .gif image/gif binary 1.0 # GIF
AddType .ief image/ief binary 1.0 # Image Exchange
AddType .jpg image/jpeg binary 1.0 # JPEG
AddType .JPEG image/jpeg binary 1.0
AddType .JPE image/jpeg binary 1.0
AddType .jpe image/jpeg binary 1.0
AddType .JPEG image/jpeg binary 1.0
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AddType</th>
<th>Type Description</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.jpeg</td>
<td>image/jpeg</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.tif</td>
<td>image/tiff</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # TIFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.tiff</td>
<td>image/tiff</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ras</td>
<td>image/cmu-raster</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.pnm</td>
<td>image/x-portable-anymap</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # PBM Anymap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.pbm</td>
<td>image/x-portable-bitmap</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # PBM Bitmap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.pgm</td>
<td>image/x-portable-graymap</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # PBM Graymap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ppm</td>
<td>image/x-portable-pixmap</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # PBM Pixmap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.rgb</td>
<td>image/x-rgb</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.xbm</td>
<td>image/x-xbitmap</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0 # X bitmap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.xpm</td>
<td>image/x-xpixmap</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # X pixmap format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.xwd</td>
<td>image/x-xwindowdump</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # X window dump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.html</td>
<td>text/html</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0 # HTML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.htm</td>
<td>text/html</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0 # HTML on PCs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.htmls</td>
<td>text/x-ssi-html</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.shtml</td>
<td>text/x-ssi-html</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.css</td>
<td>text/css</td>
<td>8bit</td>
<td>1.0 # Style Sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.js</td>
<td>application/x-javascript</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0 # JavaScript</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.htc</td>
<td>text/x-component</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0 .htc files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.rtx</td>
<td>text/richtext</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0 # MIME Richtext</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.tsv</td>
<td>text/tab-separated-values</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.etx</td>
<td>text/x-setext</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>0.9 # Enhanced Txt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.mpg</td>
<td>video/mpeg</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # MPEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.mpeg</td>
<td>video/mpeg</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.qt</td>
<td>video/quicktime</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # QuickTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.mov</td>
<td>video/quicktime</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.avi</td>
<td>video/x-sgi-movie</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # SGI moviplayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.zip</td>
<td>multipart/x-zip</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 PKZIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.Z</td>
<td>application/x-compress</td>
<td>gzip</td>
<td>1.0 PKZIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.gz</td>
<td>application/x-compress</td>
<td>gzip</td>
<td>1.0 PKZIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.tar</td>
<td>multipart/x-tar</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # 4.3BSD tar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ustar</td>
<td>multipart/x-ustar</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>1.0 # POSIX tar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>.</em></td>
<td>www/unknown</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>0.2 # Try to guess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>www/unknown</td>
<td>binary</td>
<td>0.2 # Try to guess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.cxx</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic</td>
<td>0.5 # C++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AddType</td>
<td>File Extension</td>
<td>Content Type</td>
<td>Encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.for</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># Fortran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.mar</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># MACRO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.log</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># logfiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.com</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># scripts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.sdml</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># SDML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.list</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># listfiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.lst</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># listfiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.def</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># definition file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.conf</td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># definition file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>text/plain</td>
<td>ebcdic 0.5</td>
<td># files with no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# The following could be used to store ASCII DBCS:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AddType</th>
<th>File Extension</th>
<th>Content Type</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.JP932</td>
<td>text/x-DBCS</td>
<td>binary 1.0</td>
<td>IBM-932</td>
<td># Japanese DBCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.JPeuc</td>
<td>text/x-DBCS</td>
<td>binary 1.0</td>
<td>IBMJPeuc</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.JP932</td>
<td>text/x-DBCS</td>
<td>binary 1.0</td>
<td>IBM-932</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.JPeuc</td>
<td>text/x-DBCS</td>
<td>binary 1.0</td>
<td>IBMJPeuc</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Infoprint Server and IBM Health Checker for z/OS

IBM Health Checker for z/OS provides a very useful framework into which IBM components can plug their product-specific checks. Health Checker for z/OS check routines look at an installation’s configuration or environment to determine whether there are potential problems. A check routine is a program or routine that identifies potential problems before they impact your availability.

This appendix provides an example of an Infoprint Server check routine.
C.1 Infoprint Server health check

This check is performed after a CEEDUMP has been written below the base directory, or if the base directory or one or more files exceed a certain, predefined size.

Installing the health check routine

In this section we explain how to install the sample health check. These instructions assume that you are installing the checks on a system where the IBM Health Checker for z/OS is already active. Follow these steps:

1. Copy or save the contents of these files to a data set on a z/OS or z/OS.e. system.
2. Create a link list data set to save the modules to be created. (Optional)
3. Assemble and link edit each of the parts; they must be linked as reentrant:
   - hzssamac
   - hzssamck
   - hzssammt
4. All of the modules must reside in an APF-authorized library in the link list. If the data set created in step 2 is not APF-authorized, then copy the modules into an APF-authorized library in the link list.
5. Refresh the link list data set:
   - f lla,refresh
6. Add the check to the IBM Health Checker for z/OS using the hzsaddcheck dynamic exit routine, as follows:
   - setprog exit,add,exitname=hzsaddcheck,module=hzssamac
   - d prog,exit,exitname=hzsaddcheck
csv461i 13.16.30 prog,exit display 648
   - exit module state module state module state
   - hzsaddcheck iarhcadc a igvhcadc a ilrhcad a
   - hzsaddcheck ieavtshi a ixchcadc a isghcad a
   - hzsaddcheck csvhcadc a idahcadd a igwhcpd1 a
   - hzsaddcheck cnzhcadc a irrha00 a ixghclde a
   - hzsaddcheck isthcac1 a ezbhcacl a bpxhcadc a
7. Run the exit routine to add the new checks:
   - f hzsproc,addnew
8. Verify that the checks were added:
   - check owner check name
     ------------------------- -------------------------
     ibmsample hzs_sample_one_time
     ibmsample hzs_sample_interval
   - If using SDSF, use the ck panel to display checks. Or, you can use a MODIFY command:
     - f hzsproc,display,checks
C.2 Adding the health check

For a local check, you can use ADD | ADDREPLACE,CHECK, as shown in Figure C-1, to add or replace a check definition in an HZSPRMxx parmlib member. Define the check defaults and values directly in an HZSPRMxx parmlib member. You can use a MODIFY command to activate the check; for example:

F HZSPROC,ADD,PARMLIB=xx

|ADD | ADDREPLACE,CHECK=(IBMAOP,AOP_HEALTH_CHECK)  |
|CHECKROUTINE=AOPCHECK,MESSAGETABLE=AOPHCMSG  |
|INTERVAL=0:15  |
|SEVERITY=LOW  |
|REASON=(This is a test check for Infoprint Server)  |
|DATE=20070824  |
|PARM=('PATH(/var/Printsrv/)','LIMIT(60G)','SIZE(400M)')  |
|VERBOSE=NO  |
|ENTRYCODE=1  |
|USS=YES  |

Figure C-1  Sample HZSPRMxx parmlib member statement

C.2.1 Sample check routine

A local check runs in the IBM Health Checker for z/OS address space; see Example C-1.

Example: C-1  Sample check routine

```
* START OF SPECIFICATIONS *******************************************
* MEMBER NAME:  AOPCHECK
* DESCRIPTIVE NAME:  SAMPLE HEALTH CHECK PROGRAM TO SHOW THE
*                    POSSIBILITIES OF HEALTH CHECKER
* FUNCTION: RUN A CHECK ON BEHALF OF INFOPRINT SERVER.
*
AOPCHECK
  1 ENTRY FOR THE CHECK
  2 +-SELECT FUNCTION CODE
  3 +-WHEN INITIALIZE
  4 | DO   NOTHING
  5 +-WHEN CHECK
  6 | CALL THE_CHECK
  7 +-WHEN CLEANUP/DELETE
  8 | DO   NOTHING
  9 +-OTHERWISE
 10 | DISPLAY AOP_HC_BAD_FUNCTION MESSAGE
 11 +-ENDESELECT
 12 RETURN
 13 END
```

*
* THE_CHECK
* 1 ENTRY - PERFORMS THE CHECK
* 2 +IF NEW PARMS
* 3 | CALL VALIDATE_PARMS
* 4 | +IF PARM ERROR
* 5 | : RETURN
* 6 | +ENDIF
* 7 +ENDIF
* 8 CHECK
* 9 END "THE_CHECK"
*
* THIS CHECK USES UNIX SYSTEM CALLABLE SERVICE IN ORDER TO
* READ A UNIX FILE SYSTEM
*
*******************************************************************
*
* INPUT:
*
* 1) REGISTER 0. ADDRESS OF 4K DYNAMIC WORK AREA
*   REGISTER 1. ADDRESS OF AN 8 BYTE PARAMETER LIST CONTAINING:
*           +0 THE 4 BYTE ADDRESS OF THE HZSPQE FOR THE CHECK
*           +4 THE 4 BYTE ADDRESS OF THE 4K DYNAMIC WORK AREA
*
* ENTRY-REGISTERS:
*
*    REG  0 - ADDRESS OF THE 4K DYNAMIC WORK AREA
*    REG  1 - ADDRESS OF 8 BYTE PARAMETER LIST
*    REG  2 - ADDRESS OF A 144 BYTE SAVE AREA
*    REG  3 - RETURN ADDRESS.
*    REG  4 - ADDRESS OF THE CHECK ROUTINE
*
* REGISTER USAGE:
*
*    REG  0 - WORK REGISTER
*    REG  1 - WORK REGISTER
*    REG  2 - ADDRESS OF THE HZSPQE FOR THE CHECK
*    REG  3 - Pointer to Directory entries
*    REG  4 - WORK REGISTER
*    REG  5 - WORK REGISTER
*    REG  6 - Count Of directory entries per buffer
*    REG  7 -
*    REG  8 -
*    REG  9 - ADDRESS OF FIRST 4K WORKAREA
*    REG 10 - ADDRESS OF CURRENT 4K WORKAREA
*    REG 12 - BASE ADDRESS
*    REG 13 -
*    REG 14 - LINKAGE REGISTER
*    REG 15 - WORK REGISTER
*
* RECOVERY-OPERATION:
*
* THE IBM HEALTH CHECKER FOR Z/OS PROVIDES RECOVERY AROUND
* CALLS. IF THE CHECK ROUTINE ABENDS WHILE PERFORMING
* THE PQE_CHECK FUNCTION, THE IBM HEALTH CHECKER FOR Z/OS
* WILL CALL WITH THE PQE_CLEANUP FUNCTION CODE.
EXECUTION

MODE: ENABLED
STATE: PROBLEM
KEY: 8
AMODE: 31
LOCKS HELD: NONE
ASCMODE: PRIMARY
MEMORY MODE: P=S=H
DISPATCH MODE: TASK
ADDRESS SPACE: HEALTH CHECKER

NAME MAPPING USE DESCRIPTION
-------- -------- ---- ------------
DIRE BPXYDIRE R MAPPING OF DIRECTORY ENTRY
STAT BPXYSTAT R STAT SYSTEM CALL STRUCTURE
S_MODE BPXYMODE R MODE CONSTANTS SPECIFIED ON SYSCALLS
BPXYFTYP R FILE TYPE DEFINITIONS
MGB HZSMGB R HEALTHCHECKER MESSAGE BLOCK
PQE HZSPQE R HEALTHCHECKER PROCESS QUEUE ELEMENT

AOPCHECK TITLE 'INFOPRINT SERVER HEALTH CHECK'
AOPCHECK CSECT
AOPCHECK AMODE 31
AOPCHECK RMODE 31
USING AOPCHECK,R12
SAVE (14,12),,AOPCHECK_&SYSDATE

LR R12,R15 set up base register
USING WORKAREA,R10
LR R10,R0 load addr of dyn. work area
ST R14,RETADDR save return address
L R2,0(R1) access PQE address
USING HZSPQE,R2

CLC PQE_Entry_Code,=F'1' first check the entry code
JNE GETOUT it identifies the check called

AOPK010 CLC PQE_Function_Code,=A(PQE_Function_Code_Init)
JNE AOPK020
TM PQE_VERBOSE,PQE_VERBOSE_YES
BC  ALLOFF,AOPK011
LA  R1,AOPV0011
WTO  MF=(E,(1))

AOPK011  B  GETOUT

* is called at the specified interval for the check

AOPK020  CLC  PQE_Function_Code,=A(PQE_Function_Code_Check)
JNE  AOPK030
TM  PQE_VERBOSE,PQE_VERBOSE_YES
BC  ALLOFF,AOPK021
LA  R1,AOPV002I
WTO  MF=(E,(1))

AOPK021  SR  R1,R1
ST  R1,PREV                            clear the PREV pointer
ST  R1,NEXT                            clear the NEXT pointer
MVC  ID(L'ID),=CL8'AOPCHECK'            set eyecatcher
ST  R1,SIZE_LO                         size must be zero
ST  R1,SIZE_HI                         size must be zero
LR  R9,R10                             save first WORKAREA pointer

* Put out the input parameter list if VERBOSE = YES

TM  PQE_VERBOSE,PQE_VERBOSE_YES
BC  ALLOFF,START
MVC  WTOPFLG,=X'0000'                  clear the WTO flag bytes
LH  R1,PQE_Parmlen                      length of input parameter
BCTR  R1,0                               Minus one for EXECUTE MVC
EX  R1,MOVE                              move them over
LA  R1,4(O,R1)                          add 4 for WTO
ST  R1,WTOPLEN                          store the path len
LA  R1,WTOPATH                          store path len
WTO  MF=(E,(1))                         save first WORKAREA pointer
B  START

MOVE  MVC  PATHBUF(0),PQE_ParmArea
MOVE1  MVC  PATHBUF(0),PPATHBUF

START  BAL  R14,PARMTEST                read input parameter

L  R1,PATHLEN                           store the path len
ST  R1,PATHLEN                          store the path len
BCTR  R1,0                               Minus one for EXECUTE MVC
EX  R1,MOVE1                             move the input path

OPENDIR  CALL  BPX1OPD,                  Open a directory
            (PATHLEN,                        +
            Input: Directory name length  +
            PATHBUF,                       Input: Directory name   +
            RETVAL,                       Return -1 or Dir file descr.  +
            RETCODE,                      RETURN code  +
            RSNCODE,                      REASON code  +
            VL,MF=(E,PLIST)               +

            SPACE ,
            ICM  R15,B'1111',RETVAL       Test RETVAL

* ERROR
BM  CERROR

IBM Infoprint Server for z/OS Implementation Planning
Appendix C. Infoprint Server and IBM Health Checker for z/OS

```
ST R15,DIRDESC            remember directory descriptor

READ MVC BUFLENA,=A(MAXBUFF)
LA R15,BUFFERA
ST R15,BUFA
CALL BPX1RDD,               read entries from a directory  X
(DIRDESC,                 directory file descriptor       X
BUFA,                   pointer to output buffer        X
PRIMALET,                                X
BUFLENA,                  buffer size                     X
RETVAL,                         X
RETCODE,                         X
RSNCODE),                                X
VL, MF=(E, PLIST)

ICM R15,B'1111', RETVAL        Test RETVAL
* ERROR
BM CERROR
BZ ENDDIR1              RETVAL=0 means no more entries
*
LR R6,R15                  remember the amount of entries
USING DIRE,R3
LA R3,BUFFERA              point to output area
ICM R1,B'1111', NEXT
BNZ NOGET

**********************************************************************
** Obtained resources should be released when this check iteration  *
** ends. Usually, these would be resources owned by the current task *
** so that if the current task unexpectedly terminates, the system *
** would free the resource. If the system will not automatically free *
** the resource on termination of this task, the Cleanup processing  *
** must free the resource.                                        *
**********************************************************************

STORAGE OBTAIN,          X
LENGTH=WLENGTH,           X
LOC=(ANY,ANY)

ST R1,NEXT                save pointer in old buffer
DROP R10
USING NEWAREA,R1
MVC ID(L'ID),=CL8'AOPCHECK' set eyecatcher
ST R10,PREV               save the backward pointer
NOGET LR R10,R1          point to new buffer
*
* Now, there are two buffers one for the DIR entries and one for *
* the STAT entries which are read for each DIR entry *
*
* Before the first file can be read, we have to move the directory *
* path over to the new buffer.                                      *
*
LA RO, PATHBUF            Destination (new buffer)
L R1, PREV                 Address of old buffer
L R5, PATHLEN               path length from old path
```
LA R4,PATHBUF Source (old buffer)
LR R1,R5 R1 = R5 for MVCL
LR R8,R5 remember the length
MVCL R0,R4 copy the path over to the new
* buffer
LR R7,R0 remember this point
CHI R8,1 don't add a slash if root
JE COUNT that is PATHLEN=1 for '/'
MVC 0(1,R7),=CL1'/' add a slash to the DIR
LA R8,1(0,R8) add one for the slash
LA R7,1(0,R7) add one
COUNT LR R0,R7 store the append point
LH R5,DIRENTNAML new length
LR R1,R5 R1 = R5 for MVCL
LA R4,DIRENTNAME entry name
MVCL R0,R4 append the name to the path
*
LH R5,DIRENTNAML length of the entry
AR R5,R8 add to path lenght
DROP R1
USING NEWAREA,R10
ST R5,PATHLEN store the entire path length
*
* Throw an error once the PATHLEN exceeds the maximum allowed
*
MVC BUflenA,=A(MAXBUFF)
LA R15,BUFFERA
CALL BPX1LST,                               X
(PATHLEN,                                           X
PATHBUF,                                           X
BUflenA,                                           X
BUFFERA,                                           X
RETVAL,                                           X
RETCODE,                                           X
RSNCODE), X
VL,MF=(E,PLIST)
ICM R15,B'1111',RETVAL Test RETVAL
* ERROR
BM CERROR
*
* Calculate the file size and all you have to do.
*
TM PQE_VERBOSE,PQE_VERBOSE_YES
BC ALLOFF,AOPK025
MVC WTOPFLG,=X'0000' display only the first 127 bytes
L R1,PATHLEN of each file
N R1,=X'0000007F' add 4 Bytes for the WTO flags
LA R1,4(0,R1)
ST R1,WTOPLEN
LA R1,WTOPATH
WTO MF=(E,(1))
AOPK025 CNOP 0,4
*
LA R4,BUFFERA
USING STAT,R4
* Display the file if it is a CEEDUMP
  * COMPARE CLC DIRENTNAME(7),=CL7'CEEDUMP'
    BE MSG01             issue the full filename
  *
* Display the file if file size is greater than SIZE(nnnnx)
*    
  CLC SIZE,ST_SIZE
  JH SIZEOK
  
  MSG01    MVC LINE(L'LINE),=52X'40'
  CLC PATHLEN,=A(53)
  JL MOVE01
  LA R14,PATHBUF
  L R1,PATHLEN
  S R1,=A(52)
  LA R14,0(R1,R14)
  MVC LINE(L'LINE),0(R14)
  MVC LINE(2),=Cl2'..
  B MOVE02
  
  EX04    MVC LINE(0),PATHBUF
  MOVE01  L R1,PATHLEN
         BCTR R1,0           Minus one for EXECUTE
         EX R1,EX04
  *
  MOVE02  LA R1,MGBAREA
          ST R1,MGBADDR
          Using HZSMGB1,R1
          MVC MGB1_MessageNumber,=F'2'   Message with XREFTEXT=002
          MVC MGB1_insert_cnt,=F'2'      two inserts
          DROP R1
          PUSH USING
          USING MGB1_MsgInsertDesc,INSERT1
          MVC MGB1_MsgInsertDesc_Length(2),=AL2(L'LINE)
          LA R1,LINE
          ST R1,MGB1_MsgInsertDesc_Addr Insert the adress
          POP USING
          PUSH USING
          USING MGB1_MsgInsertDesc,INSERT2
          MVC MGB1_MsgInsertDesc_Length,=AL2(L'ST_SIZE)
          LA R1,ST_SIZE
          ST R1,MGB1_MsgInsertDesc_Addr Insert the adress
          POP USING
  *
          HZSFMSG REQUEST=CHECKMSG,MGBADDR=MGBADDR,
                         MF=(E,HZSFMSG_LIST)
          ICM R15,B'1111',RETCODE     Test Return code
          *
          ERROR
          BNZ CERROR
  *
  SIZEOK  L R1,ST_BLKSIZE     File Block size
          M R0,ST_BLOCKS         Number of blocks allocated
DROP R10
USING NEWAREA,R9
AL R1,SIZE_LO    Add low order word
ALC R0,SIZE_HI   Add high order word
ST R1,SIZE_LO    store new low order word
ST R0,SIZE_HI    store new high order word
DROP R9
USING NEWAREA,R10

* 
LA R4,ST_MODE
USING S_MODE,R4
CLI S_TYPE,FT_DIR    is it a directory ?
BNE CONTO1    No. Continue

* 
CLC DIRENTNAME(1),=C'.'    starts with a dot ?
BE CONTO1    Yes, continue

* This entry is not a file but a new directory. Go open it.
* 
STM R2,R12,REGS    save regs of this level
B OPENDIR

* 
CONTO1 AH R3,DIRENTLEN
L R1,=X'00040000'    load end marker
C R1,0(0,R3)    last entry ?
BE ENDDIR

BCT R6,COUNT    continue till R6=0, that is
* all entries processed

* 
ICM R10,B'1111',PREV    go back to prev. buf. for read
B READ    R6 = 0, read next DIR buffer

* 
ENDDIR ICM R10,B'1111',PREV    get previous buffer
* ERROR
BZ GETOUT    a buffer is missing

* 
ENDDIR1 CALL BPX1CLD,
(DIRDESC,    Close a directory    +
Input: Directory file descript.    +
RETV   ,    Return -1 or 0    +
RETCODE,
RSNCODE),
VL,MF=(E,PLIST)

* 
ICM R15,B'1111',RETV   Test RETV
* ERROR
BM CERROR
ICM R1,B'1111',NEXT
STORAGE RELEASE,
ADDR=(R1),    X
LENGTH=WLENGTH

* 
ICM R1,B'1111',PREV    back on first level ??
BZ FINISH    YES, finish (end)
SR R1,R1
ST R1,NEXT    clear next pointer
LM    R2,R12,REGS       reload old registers
B     CONT01

*  * final processing
*  * check the size limit of the file system against LIMIT(nnnn)
*  
FINISH   CLC   LIMIT,SYSSIZE
JH     GETOUT
LA     R1,MGBAREA
ST     R1,MGBADDR
Using HZSMGB1,R1
MVC    MGB1_MessageNumber,=F'1'   Message with XREFTEXT=001
MVC    MGB1_insert_cnt,=F'1'      two inserts
DROP   R1
PUSH   USING
USING MGB1_MsgInsertDesc,INSERT1
MVC    MGB1_MsgInsertDesc_Length,=AL2(L'SYSSIZE)
LA     R1,SYSSIZE
ST     R1,MGB1_MsgInsertDesc_Addr Insert the address
POP    USING
*  
HZSFMSG REQUEST=CHECKMSG,MGBADDR=MGBADDR,                     X
  MGBFORMAT=1,RETCODE=RETCODE,RSNCODE=RSNCODE,            X
  MF=(E,HZSFMSG_LIST)
  
*  ICM   R15,B'1111',RETVAL      Test RETVAL
*  * ERROR
BM    CERROR
B     GETOUT                  READY and OUT
DROP  R10

******************************************************************************
*
* Subroutine to check Parameters
* All parameter must follow this syntax rule
* PARM=('PATH(/var/Printsrv)','LIMIT(nnnnK)','SIZE(nnnnM)')
*
* nnnn = 0 - 9999 ( k / M / G / T ) Bytes
*
* The INPUT path must not exceed 128 Bytes !
*
* working register R0, R1, R3, R4, R5 and R15
* results are stored into the first workarea pointed to by R9
* PATH() - is the directory of the file system being checked
* LIMIT() - is the size limit of the file system
* SIZE() - is the size limit of each file in the file system
*
* Entry Point : PARMTEST
******************************************************************************
*
* USING WORKAREA,R9
PARMTEST TM    PQE_MoreFlags,PQE_LookAtParms
JZ    PARMEND
*
* Check that the 1. parameter begins with "PATH("
* CLC  PQE_ParmArea(5),=CL5'PATH('  
JNE  PERROR  
LA  R1,PQE_ParmArea+5  
LR  R15,R1  
LA  R3,PPATHBUF  
MORE  CLI  O(R1),C'/  
BE  PIEND  
    at the end ?  
NOTEND  MVC  O(1,R3),O(R1)  
    copy next character  
LA  R1,1(R1)  
LA  R3,1(R3)  
CLI  O(R1),C')'  
BE  PIEND1  
B  MORE  
PIEND  CLI  1(R1),C')'  
    at the real end ?  
BNE  NOTEND  
SR  R1,R15  
    calculate path length  
BZ  PERROR  
    zero path length  
LA  R15,1(R15)  
    add one byte because '/'  
J  PIEND2  
PIEND1  SR  R1,R15  
    calculate path length  
BZ  PERROR  
    zero path length  
PIEND2  CHI  R1,127  
    path must be less than 128  
BH  PERROR  
ST  R1,PPATHLEN  
LA  R1,2(R1,R15)  
    pathlen), = pathlen + 2  
*  
    * Check that the 2. parameter begins with "LIMIT("  
*  
    CLC  O(6,R1),=CL6'LIMIT('  
JNE  PERROR  
LA  R1,6(R1)  
    point to first number  
LR  R15,R1  
    remember that position  
BAL  R5,TRANS  
    translate to binary  
ST  R0,LIMITH  
ST  R1,LIMITL  
*  
    * Check that the 3. parameter begins with "SIZE("  
*  
    LA  R15,2(R15)  
    point behind the 2. parm  
LR  R1,R15  
    restore position  
CLC  O(5,R1),=CL5'SIZE('  
JNE  PERROR  
LA  R1,5(R1)  
    point to first number  
LR  R15,R1  
    remember that position  
BAL  R5,TRANS  
    translate to binary  
ST  R0,SIZETH  
ST  R1,SIZEL  
*  
PARMEND  BR  R14  
*  
    * Suproutine to translate a number to binary  
*  
TRANS  LA  R3,INPUT  
TRANS1  CLI  O(R1),C'9'  
    keine Zahl
BH    PERROR                  yes, escape the loop
CLI   0(R1),C'O'              keine Zahl
BL    PAEND                   yes, escape the loop
MVC   0(1,R3),0(R1)           move to input
LA    R1,1(R1)                next position
LA    R3,1(R3)                next position
B     TRANS1

PAEND  ST    R1,POS1                 remember current position
SR    R1,R15                  how many numbers ?
BZ    PERROR                  must be at least one
CHI   R1,4                    more than 4 numbers not allowed
BH    PERROR
L     R0,=CL4'0000'           load prefix
ST    R0,PREFIX
LA    R0,PREFIX
AR    R1,R0
PACK   WORK(8),0(4,R1)
CVB   R1,WORK                 convert to binary
SR    RO,RO
L     R15,POS1                restore position
CLI   0(R15),C')'             Bytes ?
BE    RET
CLI   0(R15),C'K'             Kilo bytes ?
BE    PKILO
CLI   0(R15),C'M'             Mega Bytes ?
BE    PMEGA
CLI   0(R15),C'G'             Giga Bytes ?
BE    PGIGA
CLI   0(R15),C'T'             Tera Bytes ?
BE    PTERA
B     PERROR                  syntax error

PTERA   SLDL  R0,10(0)                multiply by 1024
PGIGA   SLDL  R0,10(0)                multiply by 1024
PMEGA   SLDL  R0,10(0)                multiply by 1024
PKILO   SLDL  R0,10(0)                multiply by 1024
LA    R15,1(R15)              move one position further

RET      BR    R5
USING WORKAREA,R10
PERROR   HZSFMSG REQUEST=STOP,REASON=BADPARM,
          MF=(E,HZSFMSG_LIST)
          X
          B    GETOUT
          *
          * is called right after the check function
          *
AOPK030  CLC   PQE_Function_Code,=A(PQE_Function_Code_cleanup)
JNE   AOPK040
TM    PQE_VERBOSE,PQE_VERBOSE_YES
BC    ALLOFF,AOPK031
LA    R1,AOPV003I
WTO   MF=(E,(1))
AOPK031  B    GETOUT
          *
          * is called once at the end of the life of the check
          *
AOPK040  CLC   PQE_Function_Code,=A(PQE_Function_Code_Delete)
JNE GETOUT
TM PQE_VERBOSE,PQE_VERBOSE_YES
BC ALLOFF,AOPK041
LA R1,AOPV004I
WTO MF=(E,(1))
AOPK041 B GETOUT
*
CERROR HZSFMSG REQUEST=HZSMSG,REASON=ERROR,DIAG=RETCODE,
      MF=(E,HZSFMSG_LIST)
GETOUT L R14,RETADDR
BR R14
* 
STATAREA DS OD               STATIC AREA
LTORG                  LITERALS
AOPV001I WTO 'AOPV001I Entry of PQE_Function_Code_Init',MF=L
AOPV002I WTO 'AOPV002I Entry of PQE_Function_Code_Check',MF=L
AOPV003I WTO 'AOPV003I Entry of PQE_Function_Code_Cleanup',MF=L
AOPV004I WTO 'AOPV004I Entry of PQE_Function_Code_Delete',MF=L
*
PRIMALET DC A(0)          Primary ALET
*
*********************************************************************
*        DATA AREAS                                                 *
*********************************************************************
BPXYSTAT ,
BPXYMODE ,
BPXYFTYP ,
BPXYDIRE ,
HZSMGB ,
HZSPQE ,
*
*  Retained Working Area Map - This maps the area provided by the
*  IBM Health Checker for z/OS in field PqeChkWork. The values
*  placed into this area are retained from call to call.
*  Thus the name Retained.
* 
HZSPQE DSECT Within HZSPQE
ORG PQECHKWORK Persistent Data (x'800' bytes)
PARM DS OD
LIMIT DS OD
LIMITH DS F
LIMITL DS F
SIZE DS OD
SIZEH DS F
SIZEL DS F
SYSSIZE DS OD
SIZE_HI DS F
SIZE_LO DS F
*
WORK DS XLB packed decimal
POS1 DS CL4
PREFIX DS CL4
INPUT DS CL4
PPATHLEN DS F The Pathlen value
PPATHBUF DS CL128 input path is limited by 128
PARM_LEN EQU *-PARM
  *
  * ROOM FOR 4096 BYTES USING THE INPUT AREA IN REGISTER 0
  *
WORKAREA DSECT
OLDAREA DS OF
NEWAREA DS OF
PREV DS F
NEXT DS F
ID DS CL8 Room for eyecatcher
REGS DS CL72
LINE DS CL52
  *
DIRDESC DS F
RETVAL DS F
RETCODE DS F
RSNCODE DS F
PLIST DS 8F PLIST for USS calls
RETTADDR DS A
MGBADDR DS A
MGBAREA DS CL(HZSMGB1_LEN)
INSERT1 DS CL(MGB1_MsgInsertDesc.Len) Area for first Insert
INSERT2 DS CL(MGB1_MsgInsertDesc.Len) Area for second Insert
HZSFMSG MF=(L,HZSFMSG.List),
  +
  PLISTVER=MAX
BUFA DS F
PATHLEN DS F
  * keep the next 5 definitions together
WTOPLEN DS OF WTO length field
GAB DS H
WTOPATH DS H WTO length
WTOPFLAGS DS H WTO flags
PATHBUF DS CL512 max. USS path length
BUFLENA DS F
LENGTH EQU *-WORKAREA
BUFFERA DS CL(4096-LENGTH) Buffer
MAXBUFF EQU *-BUFFERA
WLENGTH EQU *-WORKAREA Workarea length 4kByte
*********************************************************************
*        GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTERS                                  *
*********************************************************************
YREGS
*********************************************************************
*        AFTER TEST UNDER MASK INSTRUCTIONS                         *
*********************************************************************
ALLON EQU 1 ALL ON
MIXED EQU 4 MIXED
NALLOFF EQU 5 ALLON+MIXED
ALLOFF EQU 8 ALL OFF
NALLON EQU 12 ALLOFF+MIXED
END
Sample JCL to assemble check routine

Example C-2 shows sample JCL used to assemble and link the check routine.

```plaintext
// JOB ...
//LIB  JCLLIB ORDER=ASM.SASMSAM1
//*
//ASM   EXEC PROC=ASMACL,
//      PARM.C='OBJ',
//      PARM.L='LIST,RENT,REUS,MAP,AC=0'
//C.SYSLIB  DD DSN=SYS1.MODGEN,DISP=SHR
//      DD DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//      DD DSN=SYS1.AMODGEN,DISP=SHR
//L.SYSLIB  DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.CSSLIB
//L.SYSLMOD  DD DISP=SHR,DSN= ???
//C.SYSLIB  DD DISP=SHR,DSN= ???
```

The message table defines the check output messages issued by the check routine. Example C-3 displays a complete check message data set.

You need to generate the messages from the message input data set into a compiled assembler CSECT using the message generation exec HZMSGEN. Sample JCL is contained in SYS1.SAMPLIB.

C.2.2 Sample message table

Example C-3  Sample message table

```plaintext
<lines props="copyright" id="KGOETZE">
*    SAMPLE ASSEMBLER COMMENT FOR COPYRIGHT
</lines>
<msglist xreftext="AOPCHECK">
<!--  ================================================================  -->
<!--  MESSAGE  AOPK001I                                                 -->
<!--  ================================================================  -->
<msg class="Exception">
<msgnum xreftext="001">AOPK001I</msgnum>
<msgtext>
The &hzsckname; has found one or more potential problems with the size of the file system.
Current filesystem size is <mv class=decimal>size</mv>
</msgtext>
<msgitem class="explanation">
<p>
The filesystem might run out of space!
Make sure that the file system has enough space.
</p></msgitem>
</msg>
</msglist>
```
Processing continues.

For information about how much space is required, see "Calculating DASD space requirements Infoprint Server Customization, topic 3.5.2.1.

AOPCHECK

Header line for the Infoprint Server check.
C.2.3 Sample JCL for message table

Example C-4 displays sample JCL used to convert and link a message table.

Example: C-4  Sample JCL to convert and link the message table

```
// JOB ...
//CONV EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,REGION=32M,PARM='%HZSMSTGEN NLSHECK(N)
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSPROC DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.SBLSCLIO
//SYSTSN DD DUMMY
//HZSADSN DD DSN=&&MOD,
//         DISP=(NEW,PASS),
//         SPACE=(32760,(15,15,1),RLSE),
//         DCB=(LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=32720,RECFM=FB,DSORG=PS)
```
//HZSSDSN DD DUMMY
//HZSMDSN DD DISP=SHR,DSN= ???
*******************************************************************************
//CL             EXEC PROC=ASMACL,
//                 PARM.L='LIST,RENT,REUS,MAP,AC=0'
//L.SYSLMOD DD DISP=SHR,DSN= ???
//C.SYSIN DD DSN=&MOD,DISP=(SHR,DELETE)
View the common message log tool

The common message log tool is a REXX program started under ISPF that brings up a panel where you can enter all the information needed to select messages from the message log. It is useful when additional search keywords can be entered, because it allows you to limit the number of messages to only those belonging to a certain user or printer.
D.1 REXX program to view common message log

This tool consists of three parts: an ISPF panel, an ISPF macro, and a REXX program. All three parts must be installed into the appropriate system libraries.

D.2 The ISPF panel

The ISPF panel is the interface to the user, and it determines what values can be entered; see Example D-1. This panel will also fill in a default for the begin time value.

Example: D-1  Panel for the message log browse tool

```
)ATTR
~ type(input) intens(high) color(yellow) just(left) caps(off)
$ type(text) intens(high) color(yellow)
Ä type(text) intens(high) color(turq)
} type(output) intens(high) color(pink)
{ type(output) intens(high) color(turq) just(left)
# type(output) intens(high) color(yellow) just(left)
@ type(output) intens(high) color(yellow) just(right)
)BODY lmsg(lmsg) WINDOW(59,16)
%---------- Infoprint Common Message Log Browse ----------
% Cmd$==>_ZCMD
{lmsg
$Select Átime interval $or ÁLast $minutes:
% ÅBegin $==>_Z _Z _Z _Z _Z Å year month day hour minute
ÅEnd $==>_Z _Z _Z _Z _Z Å year month day hour minute
$ -or-
ÅLast $==>_Z Å minutes
$Note: ÅBegin $and ÅEnd $times ignored when ÅLast $filled.
$
ÅUser $==>_UID Å User ID filter
ÅChars $==>_CHARS Å Select with characters
$}
)INIT
.ZVARS = '( BY BMO BD BMI EY EMO ED EH EMI MR)'
IF (&FT NE '98')
  &BY = &ZSTDYEAR
  &BMO = &ZMONTH
  &BD = &ZDAY
  &BH = TRUNC (&ZTIME, ':')
  &BMI = .TRAIL
  &EY = ', '
  &EMO = ', '
  &ED = ', '
  &EH = ', '
  &EMI = ', '
  &MR = ', '
  &UID = ', '
  &CHARS = ', '
&FT = '98'
.CURSOR = BH
```
/*)REINIT */
/* REFRESH ( EY EMO ED EH EMI BY BMO ) */
PROC
&ZEDMSG = ' '
IF (&MR = ' ')
  &ZEDMSG = 'Value must be numeric'
  IF (&BMI NE ' ')
    VER(&BMI,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  ELSE
    &BMI = '00'
  IF (&BH NE ' ')
    VER(&BH,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  IF (&BD NE ' ')
    VER(&BD,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  IF (&BMO NE ' ')
    VER(&BMO,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  IF (&EMI NE ' ')
    VER(&EMI,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  IF (&BH NE ' ')
    VER(&BH,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  IF (&EMO NE ' ')
    VER(&EMO,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
  IF (&BH NE ' ')
    VER(&BH,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
ELSE
  &ZEDLMSG = 'Last minutes must be numeric'
VER(&MR,NB,NUM,MSG=ISRZ001)
)END

D.3 ISPF EDIT macro

The ISPF EDIT macro is a very easy and effective way either to include information that you want to see, or exclude information that you do want not to see. The source code for the sample is shown in Example D-2.

Example: D-2 ISPF EDIT macro

/* REXX */
address "ISREDIT"
"MACRO "
address "ISPEXEC" "VGET (UID CHARS) SHARED"
"AUTOSAVE ON"
if uid <> "" then,
  "EXCLUDE 'user:"uid"' ALL"
if chars <> "" then,
  "EXCLUDE "chars"' ALL"
"DELETE ALL NX"
"RESET"
"(VAR) = LINENUM .ZLAST"
if var = 0 then do
  zedsmsg = ""
  zedlmsg = "AOPLGBR - Nothing left to show after filtering!"
  address "ISPEXEC" "SETMSG MSG(ISRZ001)"
  "CANCEL"
end
exit
D.4 REXX program

The REXX program reads /etc/profile to determine the current TZ environment variable, and it displays either all messages it finds, or STDER (if there is an error). It uses AOPBATCH to establish a UNIX System Service environment.

Example: D-3   REXX program

/* rexx */
parse arg aa
/* turn on tracing if requested */
z = wordpos("TRC",translate(aa))
if z ^= 0 then do
  Trace "I"
  aa = delword(aa,z,1)
end
else Trace "O"
  /*********************************************/
  address "TSO"
  rc = 24
  aoprc = 32
  if  aa = "?" | aa = "-?" | translate(aa) = abbrev("HELP",1) then do
    x = sayit("Browse Infoprint Common Message Log under ISPF")
    exit 16
  end
  If sysvar(SYSISPF) <> "ACTIVE" then do
    x = sayit("Browse Infoprint Common Message Log works only under ISPF")
    exit 16
  end
  /* */
  ADDRESS "ISPEXEC" "LIBDEF ISPPLIB DATASET ID('KGOE.TOOLS.PLIB')"
  disprc = 0
  numeric digits 12
  /* TZ */
  cvt = c2x( storage(10,4) )
  cvt_130 = d2x( x2d(cvt) + x2d(130) )
  numeric digits 32
  tz = c2x( storage(cvt_130,4) )
  if substr(tz,1,1) = 'F' then do
    tz = d2x(4294967296 - (x2d(tz)))
    sg = "-"
  end
  else sg = "+
  tz = sg || (x2d(tz)*1.0486)%3600
  /*********************************************/
do while disprc = 0
  ADDRESS "ISPEXEC"
  "ADDPOP ROW(3) COLUMN(4) "
  "DISPLAY PANEL(AOP0001)"
  disprc = rc
  "REMPPOP"
  BT = ' '
  if BMI= ' ' then BT = '00'
  else BT = BMI
if BH <> ' ' then do
    BT = BH': 'BT
if BD <> ' ' then do
    BT = BD': 'BT
if BMO <> ' ' then do
    BT = BMO': 'BT
if BY <> ' ' then BT = BY': 'BT
end
end
end
ET = ' ' if EMI <> ' ' then do
    ET = EMI if EH <> ' ' then do
        ET = EH': 'ET
if ED <> ' ' then do
    ET = ED': 'ET
if EMO <> ' ' then do
    ET = EMO': 'ET
if EY <> ' ' then ET = EY': 'ET
end
end
end
if disprrc = 0 then do
if MR <> ' ' then qual = '-l' MR
else do
    qual = '-b' BT
if ET <> ' ' then qual = qual '-e' ET
end
address "ISPEXEC" "VPUT (UID CHAR) SHARED"
if uid = "" & chars = "" then view = 'N'
else view = 'Y'
address "TSO"
/*-------------------------------------------------------------------
AOPPRINT - OS/390 Print Server foreground print procedure
*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/
z = outtrap("OF.")
"alloc dd(STDOUT) spa(2 9) tra new reu"
trc = rc
"alloc dd(STDERR) spa(1 4) tra new reu"
rc = max(rc, trc)
"alloc dd(STDIN) spa(1) tra new reu recf(f) lrec(80) dsor(ps)"
rc = max(rc, trc)
"alloc dd(STDENV) spa(1) tra new reu recf(f) lrec(80) dsor(ps)"
rc = max(rc, trc)
z = outtrap("OFF")
/* STDENV may point to a dataset containing environment variables. */
*       Builtin values will work for the default installation. */
if rc = 0 then do
if etcxz = "" then do
etctz = "GMT0"   /* Find current TZ */
"*/alloc dd(ETC) PATH('/etc/profile') PATHOPTS(ORDONLY) reu"*/
"alloc dd(ETC) PATH('/etc/profile') PATHOPTS(ORDONLY)"
arc = rc
"EXECIO * DISKR ETC ( STEM ETC. FINIS "
erc = rc
do i = 1 to etc.0
    if pos('TZ=',etc.i) <> 0 then do
        z = strip(etc.i,"B")
        z = translate(z,' ','15'x)
        parse var z 'TZ=' etctz ' ' .
        leave
    end
end
"unalloc dd(ETC)"
end

/* */
acmd = 'aoplogu' qual
/* Set TZ into environment */
tzi.0 = 1
tzi.1 = 'TZ='etctz
"EXECIO * DISKW STDENV (STEM TZI. FINIS "
acmd.0 = 1
acmd.1 = acmd
"EXECIO * DISKW STDIN (STEM ACMD. FINIS "
parm = "sh"
z = time(r)
address "LINKMVS" "AOPBATCH parm "
aoprc = rc
z = time(r)
if aoprc = 0 then ddn = "STDOUT"
else ddn = "STDERR"
/*----------------------------------------------------------
Tell aopprint results...
----------------------------------------------------------*/
x = sayit(acmd "AOP_RC" aoprc "("z")")
If sysvar(SYSISPFF) = "ACTIVE" then do
    address "ISPEXEC" "CONTROL ERRORS RETURN"
    address "ISPEXEC" "LMINIT DATAID(DID) DDNAME("ddn")"
    if rc = 0 then do
        if view = 'Y' then
            address "ISPEXEC" "EDIT DATAID("DID") MACRO(AOPLOG01) "
        else,
            address "ISPEXEC" "BROWSE DATAID("DID")"
            address "ISPEXEC" "LMFREE DATAID("DID")"
        end
    end
end
else x = sayit(of.1)
src = rc
z = msg("OFF")
"unalloc dd(STDOUT)"
"unalloc dd(STDERR)"
z = msg(z)
rc = src
end
ADDRESS "ISPEXEC" "LIBDEF ISPPLIB"
exit
sayit:
parse arg xyz
if xyz ^= "" then zedlmsg = xyz
If sysvar(SYSISPFL) = "ACTIVE" then do
  zedsmsg = ""
  address "ISPEXEC" "SETMSG MSG(ISRZ000)"
end
else do
  if length(zedlmsg) > 115 then do
    do while zedlmsg <> ""
      zz = substr(zedlmsg,1,115)
      z = lastpos(" ",zz)
      if z = 0 then z = 115
      say strip(substr(zedlmsg,1,z),'T')
      zedlmsg = substr(zedlmsg,z+1)
    end
  end
  else say zedlmsg
end
return 0
Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this book.

IBM Redbooks

For information about ordering these publications, see “How to get Redbooks” on page 202. Note that some of the documents referenced here may be available in softcopy only.

- ABCs of z/OS System Programming Volume 7, SG24-6987
- z/OS Infoprint Server Implementation, SG24-6234
- Infoprint Server for z/OS Infoprint transforms, SG24-7498

Other publications

These publications are also relevant as further information sources:

- z/OS UNIX System Services Planning, GA22-7800
- z/OS MVS System Management Facilities (SMF), SA22-7630
- z/OS Support for Unicode: Using Unicode Services, SA22-7649
- Character Data Representation Architecture Reference and Registry, SC09-2190
- z/OS XL C/C++ Programming Guide, SC09-4765
- z/OS Communications Server: IP Configuration Reference, SC31-8776
- z/OS HTTP Server Planning, Installing, and Using, SC34-4826

Online resources

These Web sites are also relevant as further information sources:

After the HTTP server has been started you should be able to log on to Infoprint Central. To log on to Infoprint Central, enter a URL in the browser:

- For the English version:
  If the HTTP Server uses Secure Sockets Layer (SSL):
- For the Japanese version:
  If the HTTP Server uses Secure Sockets Layer (SSL):
How to get Redbooks

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks, Redpapers, Technotes, draft publications and Additional materials, as well as order hardcopy Redbooks, at this Web site:
ibm.com/redbooks

Help from IBM

IBM Support and downloads
ibm.com/support

IBM Global Services
ibm.com/services
Index

Symbols
/etc/Printsrv directory 64
/etc/Printsrv/httpd.conf 81
/usr/lpp/internet/samples/config/C
  sample http configuration file 80
/var/Printsrv directory 65

A
ADDUSER command 4, 27
ALTUSER command 4, 27
ANFUEXT control block 74
ANFUXSMF exit 73
AOP_MAXTHREADTASKS environment variable 28
AOP.ADMINISTRATOR profile
  PRINTSRV class 24
AOP.PRIORITY profile 24
AOP.SAOPEXEC 7
AOPBATCH program 35, 125
AOPBATCH utility program 35
aopd.conf configuration file 7
AOPINIT exec 7
aoplogu command 121–122, 124, 129
aoplogu utility 125
aopmg 96
AOPMSG_CONF environment variable 63
aopmsg.conf 120, 126
aopmsg.conf configuration file 63
AOPOUTD address space 62
aopoutd and aopwsmd 62
aopoutd daemon 62
AOPPRINT JCL procedure 54
aopsdbd daemon 96
aopsetup 5
aopsetup shell script 5
aopstart command 4, 9, 85
aopstop command 6
AOPSTOP procedure 6
AOPWSMD address space 62
  job selection rules 69
aopwsm daemon 62
AOPWSMD_MAXTHREADTASKS 69
ASSIZEMAX parameter 27
awk command 95

B
BPXPRMxx PARMLIB member 25

C
CEE.CEESAMP
  EDCUCSNM 142
CEE.SCEEGXLXT data set 146
CEEDUMP

health check 174
CEEDUMPs 66
chgrp command 17
chmod command 17
chown command 16
code page 138
codeset name table
  EDCUCSNM 142
common message log 121
component 32
CONSOLxx Parmlib member 121
CONSOLxx parmlib member
  HARDCOPY statement 128
CONSTD statement
  JES3 initialization 97
CONVXLAT utility 146
CPUTIMEMAX parameter 26

D
aopstart command
  start and stop 101
DEST=IP
  JCL parameter 61
DFLNTRY 47
  default printer name 47
document-codepage attribute 41

E
EDCUCSNM macro 141
ENVAR option 81

F
FILEPROCMAx parameter 27
form-definition attribute 39
FSA definition 37
FSS definition 37

G
GCCIDs 140
genxlt utility 140–141
glyph 140
graphic character (glyph) 140

H
hardcopy log function
  Infoprint Server messages 126
HP PJL protocol 61
HZSPR MBA parmlib member 175

I
iconv utility 139, 146
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Topic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>IP PrintWay extended mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>IMWEBSRV sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>IMWPROC JCL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Infoprint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 91</td>
<td>InfoPrint Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>IP PrintWay extended mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Infoprint coaxial printer support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Infoprint Manager for AIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Infoprint Manager for Windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Infoprint Server message configuration file aopmsg.conf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Infoprint Server message log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Infoprint Server Transforms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>InfoPrint Transforms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IP PrintWay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IP PrintWay basic mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>IP PrintWay extended mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139</td>
<td>iconv utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>IP PrintWay extended mode daemons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>IP PrintWay extended modeLjob selection rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IP PrintWay message log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IP Printway transmission queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>IPDS LAN attachment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>IPv6 addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ISR@390S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>JESSPOOL class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>job selection rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>job separator page data area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>JSPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>Latin1 Open Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>logdb directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>log-retention attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>lp command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>LPQ command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>lpq command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24, 102</td>
<td>Ipstat command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>LUCLASS parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXASSIZE parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>MAXCPUTIME parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXFILEPROC parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXPROCSYS statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXPROCUSER parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXTHREADS parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXTHREADS value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>MAXTHREADTASKS value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>message log database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mount command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>NetSpool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>netspool-eof-rules object class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>non-XPLINK converters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>objects in the printer inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>OPERLOG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>operator-security-profile attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>OPERCMDS class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>OPERLOG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>page-definition attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>PGM=APSPPIEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>pidu command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>pidu list command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>PIDU program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>pidu program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>ping command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Print Interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Printer Inventory files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Printer Inventory Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>customization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Printer Inventory Manager daemon aopd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18, 21, 23</td>
<td>PRINTSRV class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>access to printers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>PROCUSERMAX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>PROCUSERMAX parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>protocol-type attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>PSF for z/OS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>using Infoprint Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>RALTER command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>RDEFINE command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Redbooks Web site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>Contact us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>SAPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>SAPI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>SCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>sdbu command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>SEARCH command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>search database Infoprint Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>search database daemon aopsdbd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>searchdb database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>shell script setup.sh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Simple Network Management Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>SMF type 6 record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>SMF type 6 records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>SNA character string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SNMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>SP.SISPPENU library</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STDENV 35
STDERR 36
STDIN 36
STDOUT 36
SYS1.PROCLIB
   ANFWPROC 8
   AOPWEB 80
   APIJPJCL 9
SYS1.SAMPLIB
   ANFDEAL 8
   ANFMIJCL 9
   ANFQINIT 8
   IMWEBSRV procedure 119
SYSOUT Application Programming Interface 7
Sysout Application Programming Interface 60

T
TCP/IP translate table 146
THREADSMAX parameter 27
TZ environment variable 124

U
Universal Time Coordinated 124
UTC 124

W
Web server problems 118

X
XML Toolkit package 78

Z
z/OS HTTP Server 79, 87
z/OS system log
   (SYSLOG 122
IBM Infoprint Server for z/OS
Implementation Planning

Basic to extended mode migration, HTTP server

Sample tools for customization

ICONV customization

This IBM Redbooks publication provides installation and customization information and samples to help you implement IBM Infoprint Server for z/OS. Infoprint Server is an optional feature of z/OS that uses z/OS UNIX System Services. This feature is the basis for a total print serving solution for the z/OS environment. It lets you consolidate your print workload from many servers onto a central z/OS print server.

Infoprint Server delivers improved efficiency and lower overall printing cost with the flexibility for high-volume, high-speed printing from anywhere in the network. With Infoprint Server, you can reduce the overall cost of printing while improving manageability, data retrievability, and usability.

The following topics are described:

- Migrating from basic mode to extended mode
- Configuring an HTTP server for Infoprint Central
- Coordinating settings in JES, OMVS, TCP/IP, and the Printer Inventory using a cross-reference tool, with documentation
- Viewing messages in aoplogu using sample AOPBATCH JCL
- Monitoring and cleaning up CEEDUMP file using a sample tool
- Customizing the ICONV tables for custom code-page creation

For more information: ibm.com/redbooks